

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY

Special Operations Forces Reference Manual August 2008 FOUO JOINT SPECIAL OPERATIONS UNIVERSITY

# Special Operations Forces Reference Manual

Second Edition



August 2008

FOR OFFICIAL USE ONLY





# Special Operations Forces Reference Manual

Second Edition

The JSOU Press  
Hurlburt Field, Florida  
August 2008



Prepared by  
Joint Special Operations University  
Strategic Studies Department  
Hurlburt Field, Florida 32544

The Joint Special Operations University (JSOU) provides its publications to contribute toward expanding the body of knowledge about joint special operations. JSOU publications advance the insights and recommendations of national security professionals and the Special Operations Forces (SOF) students and leaders for consideration by the SOF community and defense leadership.

JSOU is the educational component of the United States Special Operations Command (USSOCOM), MacDill Air Force Base, Florida. The JSOU mission is to educate SOF executive, senior, and intermediate leaders and selected other national and international security decision makers, both military and civilian, through teaching, outreach, and research in the science and art of joint special operations. JSOU provides education to the men and women of SOF and to those who enable the SOF mission in a joint environment.

JSOU conducts research through its Strategic Studies Department where effort centers upon the USSOCOM mission and the commander's priorities.

The Strategic Studies Department also provides teaching and curriculum support to Professional Military Education institutions—the staff colleges and war colleges. It advances SOF strategic influence by its interaction in academic, interagency, and United States military communities.

The JSOU portal is <https://jsoupublic.socom.mil>.

Book design by Marvin Cochrane  
Parks Photographic Laboratory (46TSSQ/TSRMV)  
Eglin AFB, FL 32542

First Edition, June 2005 (Revised July 2006)  
Second Edition, August 2008

# Contents

Preface .....	ix
<b>Chapter 1. Introduction to Special Operations .....</b>	<b>1-1</b>
Special Operations .....	1-1
Four Factors for Successful Special Operations .....	1-1
Characteristics of Special Operations .....	1-1
Doctrinal Overview of Special Operations Forces .....	1-2
Successful Conduct .....	1-2
United States Special Operations Command (USSOCOM) .....	1-2
Joint Special Operations .....	1-2
Shaping Environments .....	1-3
Integrated Operations .....	1-3
Attributes of SOF .....	1-4
Precision Strike and Effects .....	1-4
Tailored and Integrated Operations .....	1-4
Ubiquitous Access .....	1-4
Regional Expertise, Presence, and Influence .....	1-4
C4ISR Dominance .....	1-4
Agile and Unconventional Logistics .....	1-4
Force Protection and Survivability .....	1-4
Special Operations Core Activities .....	1-5
Direct Action (DA) .....	1-5
Counterterrorism (CT) .....	1-5
Foreign Internal Defense (FID) .....	1-5
Unconventional Warfare (UW) .....	1-5
Special Reconnaissance (SR) .....	1-6
Information and Psychological Operations (IO and PSYOP) .....	1-6
Civil Affairs Operations (CAO) .....	1-6
Counterproliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction (CP) .....	1-6
Synchronizing DoD Global War on Terrorism Efforts .....	1-7
<b>Chapter 2. Special Operations Force Structure .....</b>	<b>2-1</b>
United States Special Operations Command (USSOCOM) .....	2-1
Headquarters, U.S. Special Operations Command (HQ USSOCOM) .....	2-3
Center for Special Operations Command Support (SOCS) .....	2-3
Center for Special Operations Networks and Communications Center (SONC) .....	2-3
Center for Special Operations (CSO) .....	2-4
Center for Special Operations Requirements and Resources (SORR) .....	2-4
Special Operations Acquisition and Logistics (SOAL) Center .....	2-5
Center for Special Operations Knowledge and Futures (SOKF) .....	2-6
Center for Special Operations Financial Management (SOFM) .....	2-7

USSOCOM Organizations .....	2-8
Joint Special Operations Command (JSOC) .....	2-8
Joint Military Information Support Command (JMISC) .....	2-9
Joint Special Operations University (JSOU) .....	2-10
Theater Special Operations Commands (TSOCs) and the Special Operations Division (SOD) .....	2-11
Special Operations Command, Joint Forces Command (SOCJFCOM) .....	2-12
Special Operations Command, Central Command (SOCCENT) .....	2-12
Special Operations Command, Europe (SOCEUR) .....	2-13
Special Operations Command, Pacific (SOCPAC) .....	2-14
Special Operations Command, Korea (SOCKOR) .....	2-15
Special Operations Command, Southern Command (SOCSOUTH) .....	2-16
Special Operations Command, Africa Command (SOCAFRICA) .....	2-17
USNORTHCOM Special Operations Division (SOD) .....	2-18
SOF Operational Command and Control .....	2-19
Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF) .....	2-19
Joint Psychological Operations Task Force (JPOTF) .....	2-21
Joint Civil-Military Operations Task Force (JCMOTF) .....	2-23
Joint Psychological Operations Command and Control .....	2-24
SOF Integration with Conventional Operations and Forces .....	2-28
<b>Chapter 3. U.S. Army Special Operations Forces .....</b>	<b>3-1</b>
United States Army Special Operations Command (USASOC) .....	3-1
Sustainment Brigade (Special Operations) (Airborne) – SB(SO)(A) .....	3-2
Mission .....	3-2
Concept of Employment .....	3-2
Capabilities .....	3-4
75th Ranger Regiment .....	3-5
75th Ranger Regiment Task .....	3-5
75th Ranger Regiment Organization .....	3-6
Equipment .....	3-7
Command and Control .....	3-8
Capabilities .....	3-8
Limitations .....	3-8
Deployment .....	3-8
U.S. Army Special Forces Command (Airborne) – (USASFC(A)) .....	3-10
USASFC(A) Tasks .....	3-10
USASFC(A) Organization .....	3-10
Special Forces Group (Airborne) .....	3-11
Special Forces Group Support Battalion .....	3-12
Special Forces Battalion (Airborne) .....	3-14
Battalion Support Company .....	3-14
Special Forces Company .....	3-15
Special Forces Operational Detachment “A” .....	3-15
160th Special Operations Aviation Regiment (SOAR) .....	3-17
SOAR Mission .....	3-17

SOAR Organization ..... 3-17

Responsibilities in Support of SOF CORE Activities ..... 3-18

SOAR Aircraft and Employment Considerations ..... 3-18

**95th Civil Affairs Brigade (Airborne) ..... 3-20**

    Personnel ..... 3-20

    Mission ..... 3-20

    U.S. Army Civil Affairs Organization ..... 3-20

**4th Psychological Operations Group (Airborne) – 4th POG(A) ..... 3-23**

    PSYOP Mission ..... 3-23

    PSYOP Group ..... 3-23

    POG Personnel ..... 3-23

    POG Organization ..... 3-24

    9th Tactical PSYOP Battalion (Tactical POB) ..... 3-26

    PSYOP Dissemination Battalion ..... 3-27

    Psychological Operations Equipment ..... 3-27

**U.S. Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School ..... 3-30**

    Organization ..... 3-30

    Task ..... 3-30

    Directorate of Special Operations Proponency ..... 3-30

    Directorate of Doctrine and Training ..... 3-31

    Joint Special Operations Medical Training Center ..... 3-31

    Noncommissioned Officers Academy ..... 3-31

    1st Special Warfare Training Group (Airborne) ..... 3-31

    Department of Special Operations Education ..... 3-31

**Chapter 4. U.S. Naval Special Operations Forces ..... 4-1**

**Naval Special Warfare Command (NAVSPECWARCOM, also NSWC) ..... 4-1**

    Naval Special Warfare Mission ..... 4-2

    Naval Special Warfare Personnel ..... 4-3

**NAVSPECWARCOM Organizations ..... 4-4**

    Naval Special Warfare Center (NSWCEN) ..... 4-4

    Naval Special Warfare Center For SEAL and SWCC ..... 4-4

    Naval Special Warfare Development Group ..... 4-4

    Naval Special Warfare Groups ..... 4-5

    Logistics and Support Units ONE and TWO (LOGSU 1/2) ..... 4-8

    Support Activity ONE and TWO (SUPPACT 1/2) ..... 4-9

    Mobile Communications Detachments (MCDs) ..... 4-9

    SEAL Team ..... 4-9

    SEAL Team – Expeditionary ..... 4-11

    Naval Special Warfare Task Force ..... 4-11

    Special Boat Teams (SBTs) ..... 4-12

    SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team ..... 4-14

    Naval Special Warfare Units ..... 4-15

**Naval Special Warfare Weapons Systems ..... 4-16**

    MK V Special Operations Craft (MK V SOC) ..... 4-16

    Special Operations Craft–Riverine (SOC-R) ..... 4-17

    Rigid Inflatable Boat (RIB) ..... 4-18

Combat Rubber Raiding Craft (CRRC) .....	4-19
SEAL Delivery Vehicle (SDV) MK VIII .....	4-19
Dry Deck Shelter (DDS) .....	4-20
Advanced SEAL Delivery System (ASDS) .....	4-20
<b>Chapter 5. U.S. Air Force Special Operations Forces .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
<b>Air Force Special Operations Command (AFSOC) .....</b>	<b>5-1</b>
AFSOC Mission .....	5-2
AFSOC Employment .....	5-2
Air Force Special Operations Training Center (AFSOTC) .....	5-3
<b>Aircraft And Unique Unit Summary .....</b>	<b>5-4</b>
MC-130E Combat Talon I, MC-130H Combat Talon II, and MC-130W Combat Spear .....	5-4
AC-130H Spectre and AC-130U Spooky .....	5-4
MC-130P Combat Shadow .....	5-4
MH-53J/M Pave Low III .....	5-4
EC-130J (Commando Solo) .....	5-4
CV-22 Osprey .....	5-5
MQ-1 Predator .....	5-5
MQ-9 Reaper .....	5-5
The 6th Special Operations Squadron (SOS) .....	5-5
Special Tactics (ST) .....	5-5
USAF Special Operations School (USAFSOS) .....	5-5
Augmenting USAF Forces .....	5-6
<b>AFSOC Numbered Air Force .....</b>	<b>5-7</b>
23rd Air Force, Air Force Special Operations Forces .....	5-7
623rd Air Operations Center (623 AOC) .....	5-7
18th Flight Test Squadron (18 FLTS) .....	5-7
11th Intelligence Squadron .....	5-7
<b>AFSOC Wings and Groups .....</b>	<b>5-8</b>
1st Special Operations Wing (1 SOW) .....	5-8
27th Special Operations Wing (27 SOW) .....	5-8
352d Special Operations Group (352 SOG) .....	5-8
353d Special Operations Group (353 SOG) .....	5-8
720th Special Tactics Group (720 STG) .....	5-9
Air Reserve and Air National Guard Components .....	5-10
Air Force Special Operations Forces Logistics .....	5-10
New AFSOC Units .....	5-11
318th Special Operations Squadron (318 SOS) .....	5-11
<b>AFSOC Aircraft and Capabilities .....</b>	<b>5-13</b>
MC-130E Combat Talon I/MC-130H Combat Talon II .....	5-13
AC-130H SPECTRE Gunship/AC-130U Spooky .....	5-19
MC-130P Combat Shadow .....	5-27
MC-130W Combat Spear .....	5-30
EC-130J Commando Solo III .....	5-31
MH-53J/M PAVE LOW III .....	5-33
CV-22 Osprey .....	5-39
U-28A .....	5-40

MQ-1 Predator .....	5-41
MQ-9 REAPER .....	5-42
<b>Special Tactics Squadrons (STS) .....</b>	<b>5-43</b>
Mission .....	5-43
Specific Employment .....	5-43
Deployment .....	5-43
Employment .....	5-44
Mission Tasks .....	5-44
Basic Planning Considerations .....	5-45
<b>Combat Aviation Advisors .....</b>	<b>5-46</b>
Mission .....	5-46
Operating Rationale .....	5-46
Concept Of Operations .....	5-46
Employment .....	5-47
Specialized Training Characteristics .....	5-48
Organization .....	5-48
Operating Arenas .....	5-49
Tasking .....	5-50
<b>Air Mobility Command (AMC) C-17 SOLL II .....</b>	<b>5-51</b>
Mission .....	5-51
Employment .....	5-51
SOLL II Capabilities .....	5-51
Planning Considerations .....	5-51
Crew Duty Day .....	5-52
<b>Chapter 6. U.S. Marine Corps Special Operations Forces .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
<b>Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command (MARSOC) .....</b>	<b>6-1</b>
Mission .....	6-1
Organization .....	6-1
Heritage, History, and Milestones .....	6-2
MARSOC Core Activities .....	6-3
Marine Special Operations Advisor Group (MSOAG) .....	6-3
1st and 2nd Marine Special Operations Battalions (MSOBs) .....	6-3
Marine Special Operations Support Group (MSOSG) .....	6-4
Marine Special Operations School (MSOS) .....	6-5
<b>Appendix A. Special Operations Related Definitions .....</b>	<b>A-1</b>
<b>Appendix B. Glossary .....</b>	<b>B-1</b>
<b>Appendix C. Bibliography .....</b>	<b>C-1</b>



# Special Operations Forces Reference Manual

## Preface

**T**his Special Operations Forces Reference Manual provides general information and mission planning data and focuses on U.S. Army, Navy, Marine, and Air Force SOF. More specifically, this document is designed to accomplish four broad purposes:

- a. Provide SOF personnel with a single primary source of fundamental reference material and planning data on all SOF components.
- b. Provide newly assigned SOF personnel or non-SOF personnel an overview of special operations and special operations forces in order to facilitate the integration of conventional forces and provide SOF capabilities and planning data to conventional force staff officers who may not routinely use this data.
- c. Provide standard SOF reference data to SOF faculty members at PME institutions for use in their instruction.
- d. When combined with tactical situations and scenarios, provide SOF commanders and units a vehicle to facilitate unit/staff-level seminar wargames.

The target audience for this manual is Special Operations staff officers and enlisted personnel at USSOCOM, its component and subordinate commands, the Theater Special Operations Commands, and the conventional force headquarters/unified commands and their staffs which may employ SOF in their areas of responsibility.

This reference manual is doctrinally based, drawing information and data from Joint, USSOCOM, and Service publications.

Distribution for this document is to U.S. Government personnel and agencies For Official Use Only. Personnel requesting a copy of this document or who wish to submit questions, comments, and issues for inclusion in future updates of the manual should contact the Joint Special Operations University, 357 Tully Street, Hurlburt Field, Florida 32544, ATTN: SOF Reference Manual Editor.



# Chapter 1. Introduction to Special Operations

## Special Operations

Special operations (SO) encompass the use of small units in direct or indirect military actions focused on strategic or operational objectives. These actions require units with combinations of specialized personnel, equipment, and tactics that exceed the routine capabilities of conventional military forces. SO are characterized by certain attributes that cumulatively distinguish them from conventional operations. SO are often politically sensitive missions where only the best-equipped and most proficient forces must be deployed to avoid detection and possible mission failure.

### *Four Factors for Successful Special Operations*

- a. Clear national and theater strategic objectives.
- b. Effective command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence (C4I) support at the operational level.
- c. Competent tactical planning and execution.
- d. A force trained, equipped, and organized to conduct special operations.

A U.S. special operations soldier performs a last minute inspection of an Iraqi special operations forces soldier before the drop during an air assault in northern Iraq.



### *Characteristics of Special Operations*

- a. Special operations normally require operator-level planning and detailed intelligence.
- b. Knowledge of the culture(s) and language(s) of the geographical area in which the mission is to be conducted.
- c. Rigorous training and rehearsals of the mission are integral to the success of the mission.
- d. They are often conducted at great distances from the supporting operational bases.
- e. They may employ sophisticated communications systems.
- f. They frequently require discriminate and precise use of force. This often requires development, acquisition, and employment of equipment that are not standard for other Department of Defense (DoD) forces.
- g. They employ sophisticated means of insertion, support, and extraction to penetrate and successfully return from hostile, denied, or politically sensitive areas.

## Doctrinal Overview of Special Operations Forces

Special operations forces (SOF) are small, specially organized units manned by carefully selected people using modified equipment and trained in unconventional applications of tactics against strategic and operational objectives.

### Successful Conduct

The successful conduct of special operations relies on individual and small unit proficiency in specialized skills applied with adaptability, improvisation, and innovation against adversaries often unprepared to react. The unique capabilities of SOF complement those of conventional forces.

### United States Special Operations Command (USSOCOM)

- a. Provides trained and combat-ready SOF to geographic combatant commanders and as directed by the President or Secretary of Defense (SecDef), plans and conducts selected SO worldwide.
- b. Integrates and coordinates DoD psychological operations (PSYOP) capabilities supporting U.S. Strategic Command's information operations (IO) responsibilities and other combatant commanders' PSYOP planning and execution.
- c. Commander, USSOCOM is the DoD lead combatant commander for planning, synchronizing, and, as directed, executing global operations against terrorist networks in coordination with other combatant commanders. This role is considered to be an internal core activity of the Headquarters, USSOCOM and includes the following specific responsibilities:
  - Integrating strategy, campaign plans, intelligence priorities, and operations
  - Prioritizing and synchronizing theater security cooperation activities, deployments, and capabilities

- Providing military representation to United States (U.S.) national and international agencies for U.S. and multinational campaigns against terrorist networks
  - Planning and executing regional activities which may support future operations.
- d. Commander, USSOCOM exercises combatant command (COCOM) of all active and reserve SOF, active U.S. Army PSYOP, and active Civil Affairs (CA) forces.
    - COCOM of continental U.S. (CONUS)-based U.S. Army Reserve (USAR) PSYOP and CA forces, U.S. Navy CA forces, and U.S. Marine Corps Reserve (USMCR) CA forces is exercised by the U.S. Joint Forces Command.
    - COCOM of Hawaii-based USAR CA forces is exercised by U.S. Pacific Command.

### Joint Special Operations

- a. SO are conducted in hostile, denied, or politically sensitive environments to achieve military, diplomatic, informational, and/or economic objectives employing military capabilities for which there is no broad conventional force requirement. These operations may require low visibility, clandestine, or covert capabilities. SO are applicable across the range of military operations. They can be conducted independently or in conjunction with operations of conventional forces or other government agencies and may include operations through, with, or by indigenous or surrogate forces. SO differ from conventional operations in degree of physical and political risk, operational techniques, modes of employment, independence from friendly support, and dependence on detailed operational intelligence and indigenous assets.
- b. SOF perform two types of activities. First, they perform activities that no other forces in DoD

conduct. Second, they perform activities that are conducted by DoD forces, but do so to a unique set of conditions and standards.

- c. SOF capabilities include being able to quickly task-organize and deploy using a lower profile or footprint than conventional forces; gaining access to hostile and denied areas; rapidly surveying, assessing, and reporting local situations; working closely with regional military and civilian authorities and populations; organizing people to help solve local problems; and providing tailored or unconventional responses to ambiguous situations. The specialized skills and low visibility capabilities inherent in SOF provide an adaptable military response in crisis situations requiring tailored, precise, and focused use of force.
- d. SOF limitations stem from their few numbers and the time needed to develop and replace highly trained people and units. Austere SOF logistical support systems require extensive support from conventional force structures. SOF are organized and trained for employment against targets of strategic and operational relevance. SOF are not used as a substitute for conventional forces.

### *Shaping Environments*

In likely or potential areas of operation, SOF play a major role in preparing and shaping environments and, when designated, battlespaces, by setting conditions which mitigate risk and facilitate successful follow-on operations. The regional focus, cross-cultural/ethnic insights, and relationships of SOF

provide access to and influence in nations where the presence of conventional U.S. forces is unacceptable or inappropriate. SOF contributions provide operational leverage by gathering critical information, undermining a potential adversary's will or capacity to wage war, and enhancing the capabilities of conventional U.S., multinational, indigenous or surrogate forces.

### *Integrated Operations*

The Joint Force Commander (JFC), using SOF independently or integrated with conventional air, ground, and naval forces, gains an additional and unique capability to achieve objectives that may not otherwise be attainable. Integration enables the JFC to take fullest advantage of conventional force/service and SOF core competencies.

SOF are most effective when SO are fully integrated into the overall plan, and the execution of SO is through proper SOF command and control (C2) elements responsive to the needs of the supported commander. SOF C2 elements are provided to supported or supporting conventional force commanders and include Joint Special Operations Task Forces to conduct a specific SO or prosecute SO in support of a theater campaign, Special Operations Command and Control Elements to synchronize integrated SOF/conventional force operations, and Special Operations Liaison Elements to coordinate SO with conventional air operations. Exchange of SOF and conventional force liaison officers is also essential to enhance situational awareness and facilitate staff planning and training for integrated operations.

## Attributes of SOF

**S**OF are unique because they provide the President and/or SecDef a broad range of capabilities. The demands of SO require forces with attributes that distinguish them from conventional forces.

### *Precision Strike and Effects*

SOF perform precision strikes and achieve scalable lethal or non-lethal effects. SOF personnel can survive in a variety of environments, and they can remain on station for extended periods. The persistence of in-area SOF produces effects beyond those of an airstrike. These effects are achieved through the utilization of human and material assets designed to perform precision reconnaissance and surveillance, and through the employment of a wide variety of weapons and methods including advanced technologies.

### *Tailored and Integrated Operations*

SOF transform and reshape organizational design and force structure to ensure effective collaboration in joint, interagency, and combined operational environments. SOF elements exercise flexibility at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels, as well as agility in terms of operational time and space considerations, types of missions, and the methods of accomplishment.

### *Ubiquitous Access*

SOF have access to and can potentially influence events or conduct overt or clandestine operations on demand. SOF possess or have access to the latest in emerging and leap-ahead mobility assets to enter, operate in, and be exfiltrated from the designated area of operations.

### *Regional Expertise, Presence, and Influence*

The SOF warrior is a diplomat, and as such utilizes recurring deployments to hone language skills, cultural awareness, and to build the political and military contacts that contribute to future operations and activities. Forward presence and regional expertise allow for “first response” abilities when required and permit a full range of unconventional military options against a targeted entity.

### *C4ISR Dominance*

Dominance in the realm of command and control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (C4ISR) is vital to the success of SOF operations. Exploiting superiority in this area allows the SOF warrior to access, develop, and operate effectively in any situation, taking decisive action that shapes the desired results without effective opposition.

### *Agile and Unconventional Logistics*

SOF are as self-sufficient as possible, but they can be provided with rapid and effective materials, utilizing both service-common and SOF-unique supplies and materials as the situation requires. Superior technology and advanced equipment are used to ensure logistical support is consistently provided to deployed units.

### *Force Protection and Survivability*

SOF elements employ stealth, speed, and countermeasures to ensure survivability and retain freedom of action. To the maximum extent possible, SOF personnel are protected from the effects of enemy offensive systems and can operate under extreme environmental conditions.

## Special Operations Core Activities

Twelve Special Operations Core Activities have been designated, as shown in Figure 1-1. SOF are organized, trained, and equipped specifically to accomplish these core activities.

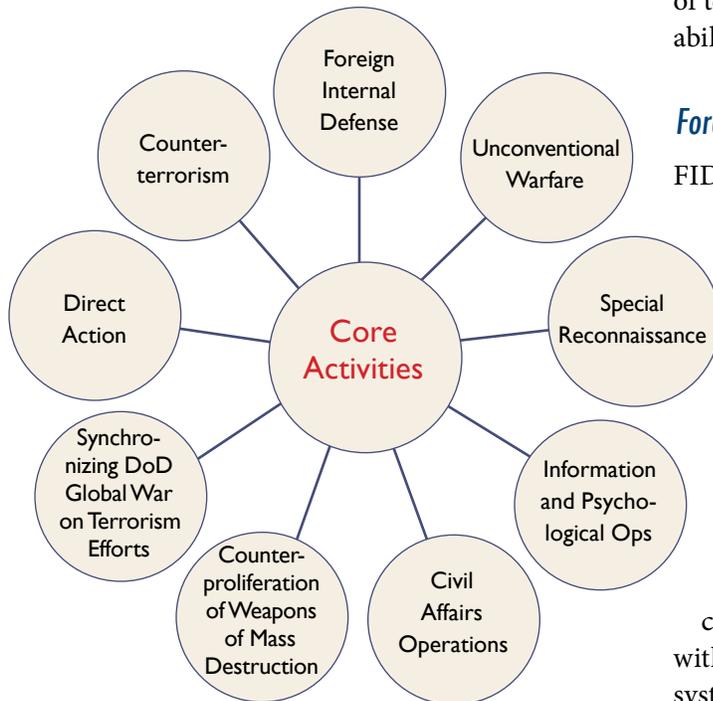


Figure 1-1. Special Operations Core Activities

### Direct Action (DA)

DA operations are short duration strikes and other small-scale offensive operations principally undertaken by SOF to seize, destroy, capture, recover, or inflict damage on designated personnel or material. In the conduct of these operations, SOF may employ raid, ambush, or direct assault tactics; emplace mines and other munitions; conduct stand off attacks by fire from air, ground, or maritime platforms; and provide terminal guidance for precision weapons, conduct independent sabotage, and anti-ship operations.

### Counterterrorism (CT)

CT is a highly specialized, resource-intensive mission. Certain SOF units maintain a high state of

readiness to conduct CT operations and possess a full range of CT capability. CT activities include antiterrorism (AT), CT, recovery of hostages or sensitive material from terrorist organizations, attack of terrorist infrastructure, and reduction of vulnerability to terrorism.

### Foreign Internal Defense (FID)

FID is participation by civilian and military agencies of a government in any of the action programs taken by another government to free and protect its society from subversion, lawlessness, and insurgency. SOF's primary contribution in this interagency activity is to organize, train, advise, and assist host nation (HN) military and paramilitary forces. The generic capabilities required for FID include instructional skills; foreign language proficiency; area and cultural orientation; tactical skills; advanced medical skills; rudimentary construction and engineering skills; familiarity with a wide variety of demolitions, weapons, weapon systems, and communications equipment; and basic PSYOP and CA skills.

### Unconventional Warfare (UW)

A broad spectrum of military and paramilitary operations, normally of long duration, predominantly conducted by indigenous or surrogate forces that are organized, trained, equipped, supported, and directed in varying degrees by an external source. UW includes guerrilla warfare and other direct offensive, low-visibility, clandestine, or covert operations, as well as the indirect activities of subversion, sabotage, intelligence activities, and evasion and escape. When UW is conducted independently during conflict or war, its primary focus is on political and psychological objectives. When UW operations support conventional military operations, the focus shifts to primarily military objectives.



AH/MH-6 Direct Action

### *Special Reconnaissance (SR)*

SOF conduct a wide variety of information gathering activities of strategic or operational significance. Collectively, these activities are called SR. SR is reconnaissance and surveillance action conducted by SOF to obtain or verify, by visual observation or other collection methods, information concerning the capabilities, intentions, and activities of an actual or potential enemy or to secure data concerning the meteorological, hydrographic, or geographic characteristics of a particular area. SR may also include assessment of chemical, biological, residual nuclear or environmental hazards in a denied area. SR includes target acquisition, area assessment, and post-strike reconnaissance. SR complements national and theater intelligence collection systems by obtaining specific, well-defined, and time-sensitive information when other systems are constrained by weather, terrain-masking, hostile countermeasures, or conflicting priorities.

### *Information and Psychological Operations (IO and PSYOP)*

IO involves actions taken to affect adversary information and information systems while defending one's own information and information systems. The following SO missions support IO: DA, SR,

PSYOP, CA, and FID. (DoD Directive S-3600.1 and JP 3-13).

PSYOP are planned operations to convey selected information and indicators to foreign audiences to influence their emotions, motives, objective reasoning, and ultimately the behavior of foreign governments, organizations, groups, and individuals. The purpose of PSYOP is to induce or reinforce foreign attitudes and behaviors favorable to the originator's objectives by conducting planned operations to convey selected information to foreign audiences to influence their emotions, motives, objective reasoning, and ultimately the behavior of foreign governments, organizations, groups, and individuals.

### *Civil Affairs Operations (CAO)*

CAO are those military operations conducted by civil affairs forces that (1) enhance the relationship between military forces and civil authorities in localities where military forces are present; (2) require coordination with other interagency organizations, intergovernmental organizations, nongovernmental organizations, indigenous populations and institutions, and the private sector; and (3) involve application of functional specialty skills that normally are the responsibility of civil government to enhance the conduct of civil-military operations.

### *Counterproliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction (CP)*

CP refers to the actions taken to seize, destroy, render safe, capture, or recover weapons of mass destruction (WMD). SOF provide unique capabilities to monitor and support compliance with arms control treaties. If directed, SOF can conduct or support SR and DA missions to locate and interdict sea, land, and air shipments of dangerous materials or weapons. SOF are tasked with organizing, training, equipping, and otherwise preparing to conduct operations in support of U.S. Government CP objectives.

### *Synchronizing DoD Global War on Terrorism Efforts*

USSOCOM integrates regional counterterrorism planning efforts, leading the larger effort of synchronizing DoD's execution of the overall plan for the Global War on Terrorism (GWOT). USSOCOM is synchronizing global operations against terrorist networks in coordination with other Combatant Commands, U.S. Government agencies, and international partners through collaboration and the employment of national-level systems to maximize these combined effects. The authority to synchronize enables USSOCOM to arrange global military actions to ensure the optimum employment of force.



# Chapter 2. Special Operations Force Structure

## United States Special Operations Command (USSOCOM)

USSOCOM was formally established as a unified combatant command at MacDill Air Force Base, Florida, on 16 April 1987. It is commanded by a four-star flag or general officer with the title Commander, United States Special Operations Command (COMUSSOCOM).

All SOF of the Army, Navy, Air Force, and Marines based in the United States are placed under COMUSSOCOM. USSOCOM has four service component commands: U.S. Army Special Operations Command (USASOC); Naval Special Warfare Command (NAVSPECWARCOM); Air Force Special Operations Command (AFSOC); Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command (MARSOC); and one sub-unified command, the Joint Special Operations Command (JSOC).

The USSOCOM mission is threefold: a) to plan, direct, and execute special operations in the conduct of the Global War on Terrorism in order to deter, disrupt, and defeat terrorist networks that threaten the

### USSOCOM VISION

Special Operations Forces must be highly trained, properly equipped and deployed to the right place at the right time for the right missions.

Our commanders and staffs must capably plan and lead the full range of lethal and non-lethal special operations missions in complex, ambiguous environments.

Our people will be professional, diplomatically and culturally astute, responsive and innovative.

As key members of Joint, Interagency, and International teams, SOF will employ all assigned authorities and apply all available elements of power to accomplish assigned missions.

### USSOCOM MISSION

Provide fully capable Special Operations Forces to defend the United States and its interests. Plan and synchronize operations against terrorist networks.

Deter, disrupt & defeat terrorist threats

- Synchronize GWOT for DoD
- Emphasize culturally-attuned engagement
- Foster interagency cooperation

Develop & support our people & families

- Focus on quality
- Care for our people and families
- Train and educate the warrior/diplomat

Sustain and modernize the force

- Upgrade SOF mobility
- Obtain persistent intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR)
- Equip the operator

United States, its citizens, and interests worldwide; b) to train and develop SOF and care for our people and families; and c) to organize, train, and equip SOF provided to geographic combatant commanders, American ambassadors, and their country teams.

USSOCOM responsibilities include:

- a. Readiness of assigned forces and monitoring the readiness of overseas SOF
- b. Monitoring the professional development of all SOF personnel
- c. Developing joint SOF tactics, techniques, and procedures
- d. Conducting specialized courses of instruction
- e. Training assigned forces
- f. Executing its own program and budget (its funding comes directly from congress and not from the services)

- g. Conducting research, development, and acquisition of special operations peculiar items
- h. Synchronizing DoD efforts in the Global War on Terrorism.



Members of U.S. Special Operations Command, 9 July 2007. DoD photo by Cherie Thurlby.

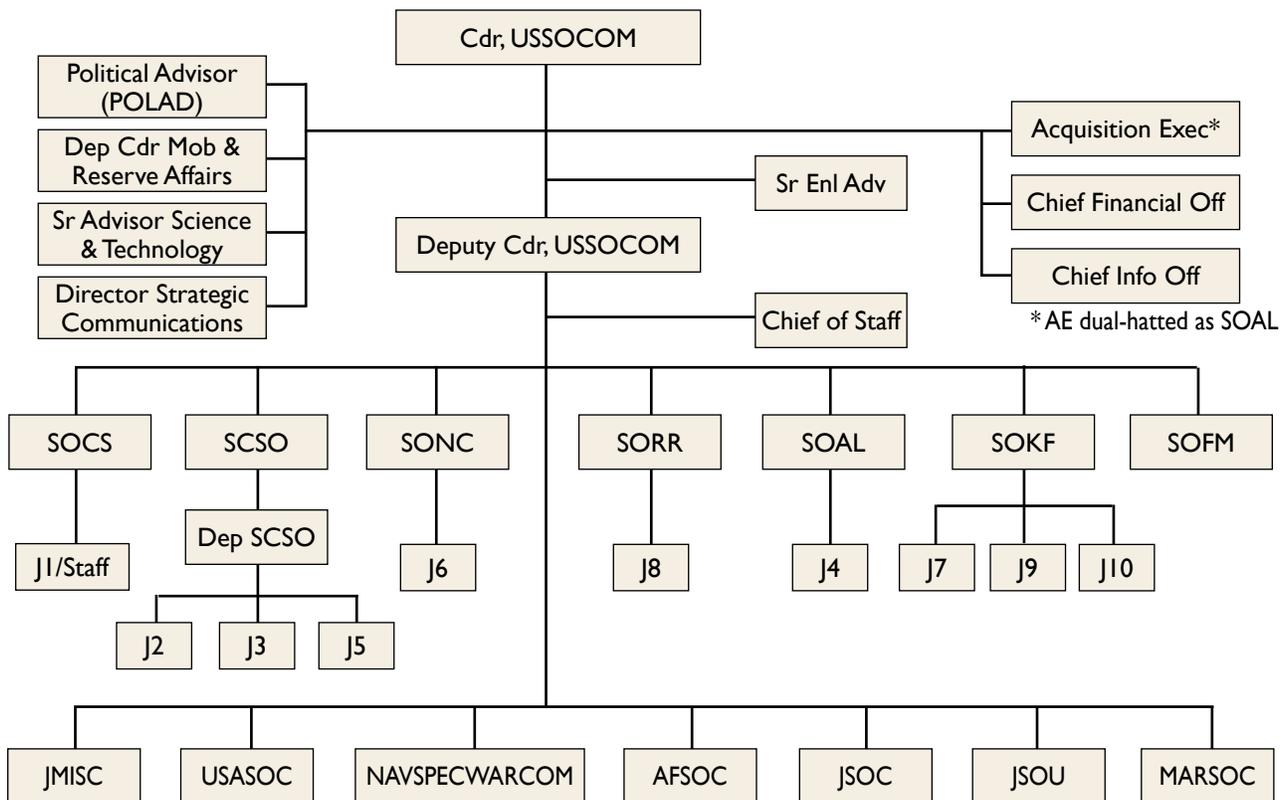


Figure 2-1. Headquarters, U.S. Special Operations Command

### Headquarters, U.S. Special Operations Command (HQ USSOCOM)

In April 2004, COMUSSOCOM reorganized the USSOCOM headquarters staff from a functional-center configuration to a blended organization, retaining the functional centers with a J-staff orientation for each. Two new centers were created (the Center for Special Operations and the Center for Special Operations Knowledge and Futures), and one was renamed (the Center for Special Operations Networks and Communications Center).

This reorganization strengthens USSOCOM's ability to support its customers by ensuring a flexible command structure adaptable to future challenges. An overview of the new organization is shown in Figure 2-1.

### Center for Special Operations Command Support (SOCS)

The SOCS is a process-oriented support center that also operates as the J1, providing personnel

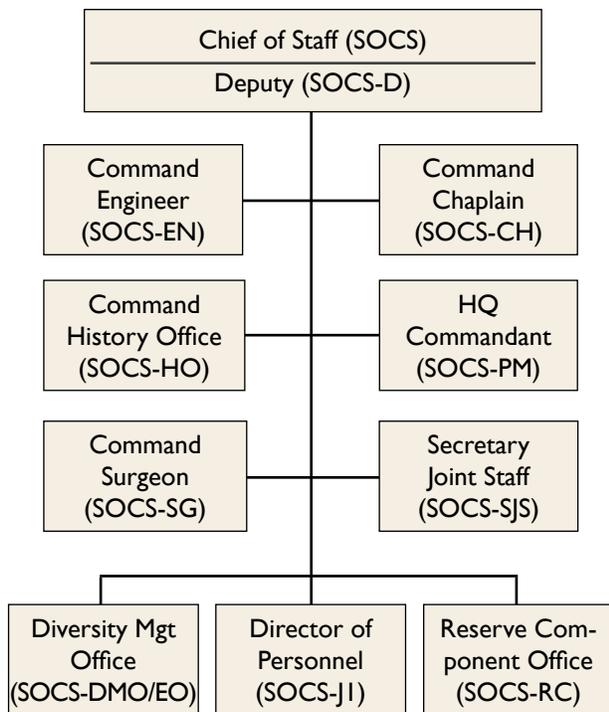


Figure 2-2. Center for Special Operations Command Support

and special staff support to the headquarters and its components. The SOCS includes public affairs, executive services, medical, chaplain, historian, equal opportunity, security, quality integration, engineering, protocol, headquarters command, and joint secretariat support services. The USSOCOM chief of staff directs the center.

### Center for Special Operations Networks and Communications Center (SONC)

The SONC performs the J6 staff function to provide for integrated information management in communications, information protection, network management, and audiovisual support. The SONC integrates C4ISR and IO to gain information superiority throughout the spectrum of engagement and conflict. The SONC validates requirements and develops special operations C4ISR and IO training, doctrine, and procedures.

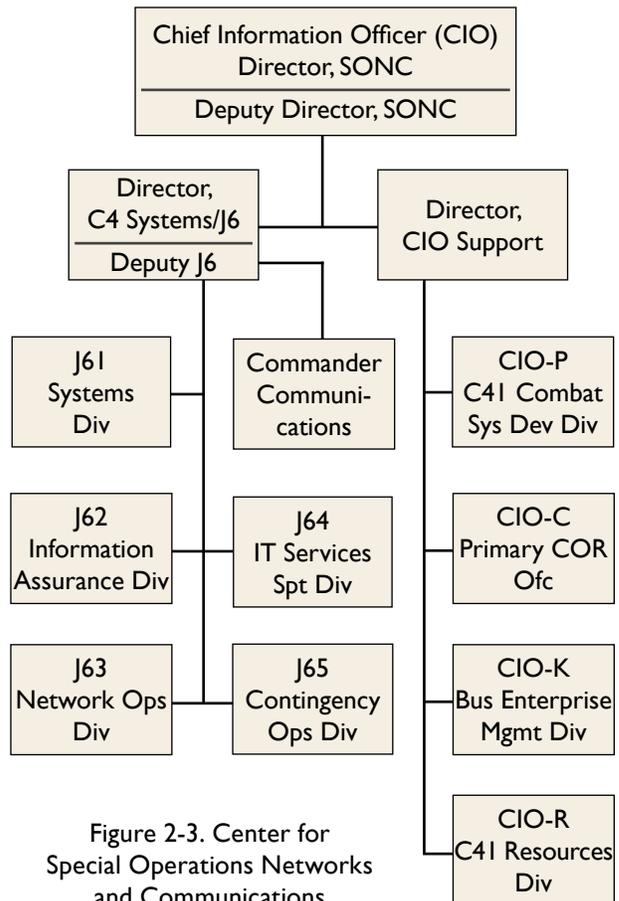


Figure 2-3. Center for Special Operations Networks and Communications

### Center for Special Operations (CSO)

USSOCOM’s CSO is the fusion point for DoD GWOT synchronization efforts, combining operations, intelligence, and long-range planning and strategy.

The CSO provides a venue for regular meetings, briefings, and conferences with each of the geographic combatant commands, the interagency, and partner nations. This consistent dialogue is the catalyst for ongoing planning and situational understanding that simply did not exist even a year ago.

The continuous collaboration is augmented with a USSOCOM-sponsored semi-annual Global Synchronization Conference. Conference participants include DoD commands and representatives from other U.S. government agencies and international partners. The conference provides a consolidated, common threat picture, a detailed review of GWOT-related plan development, and prioritizes GWOT operations, actions, and activities for near- and long-term objectives.

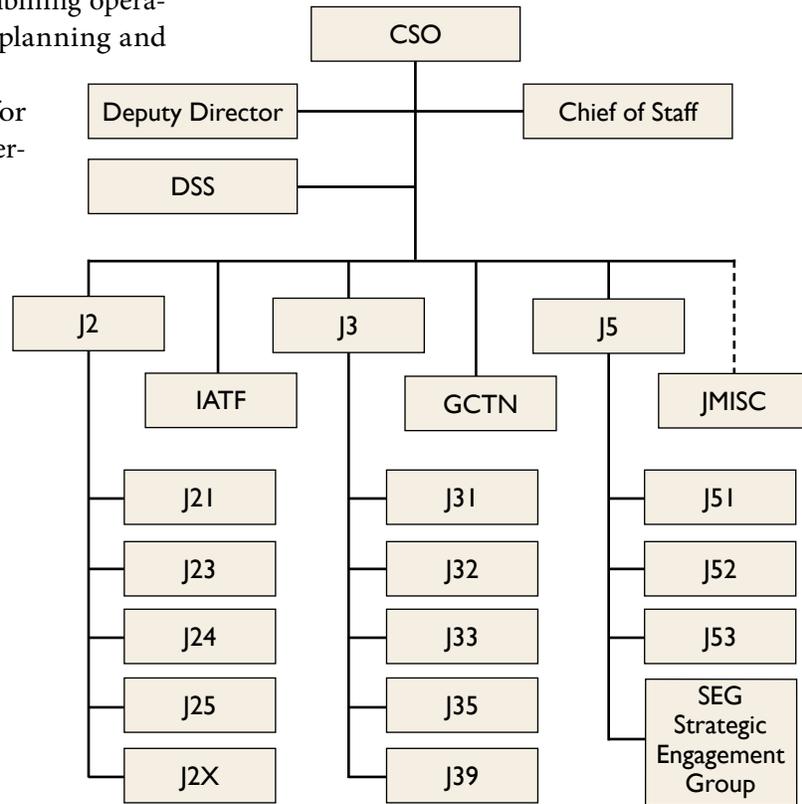


Figure 2-4. Center for Special Operations

### Center for Special Operations Requirements and Resources (SORR)

The SORR is responsible for the resourcing (J8) function, to include the USSOCOM Strategic Planning Process. The mission of the SORR is to support SOF through the development of resourcing, operational mission and force structure analysis, strategic assessments, and requirements reviews.

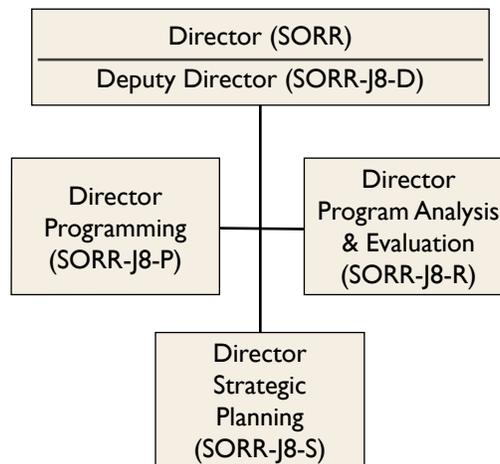


Figure 2-5. Center for Special Operations Requirements and Resources

## Special Operations Acquisition and Logistics (SOAL) Center

The SOAL combines the acquisition functions of the command with the logistics functions of the J4 staff to provide research, development, acquisition, and logistics support to COMUSSOCOM. The SOAL plans, directs, reviews, and evaluates materiel development, procurement, and sustainment for USSOCOM; conducts liaison with USSOCOM components to ensure operational requirements are met by developmental programs; develops and promulgates USSOCOM acquisition and logistics policies

and procedures; and manages a select group of special operations peculiar programs. Benefits derived from this organization include the following:

- Effective acquisition and logistics support to USSOCOM, components, and Theater Special Operations Commands
- Cradle to grave management of SOF-related systems
- Improved life cycle cost management
- Portfolio and materiel management, and
- Elimination of organizational stove pipes or barriers to collaboration worldwide of logistics support to SOF.

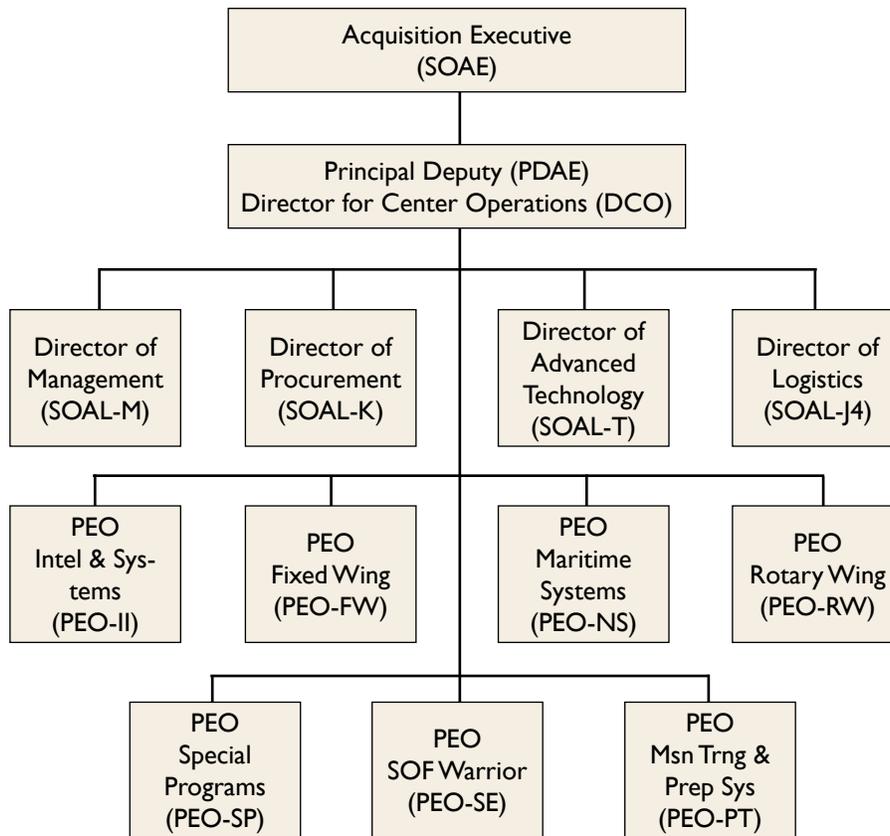


Figure 2-6. Center for Special Operations Acquisition and Logistics

## Center for Special Operations Knowledge and Futures (SOKF)

The SOKF was established on May 1, 2004, at the direction of General Bryan D. Brown, Commander, USSOCOM. Originally consisting of two directorates, the J7 (Directorate of SOF Knowledge) and J9 (Directorate of Futures), SOKF now includes the J10 (Irregular Warfare Directorate), which was added in September 2007. The Center's mission is to develop and integrate warfighting capabilities for the present and future in order to train, organize, and equip special operations forces to synchronize and execute global operations against terrorist networks and

deploy combat ready forces to combatant commands. Title X responsibilities of the Center are:

- a. Developing strategy, doctrine, and tactics
- b. Recommending programs and proposing budgets
- c. Controlling expenditures
- d. Educating and training SOF
- e. Conducting specialized courses
- f. Prioritizing requirements
- g. Validating requirements
- h. Ensuring interoperability of equipment and forces
- i. Ensuring combat readiness of SOF
- j. Preparing SOF to carry out assigned missions.

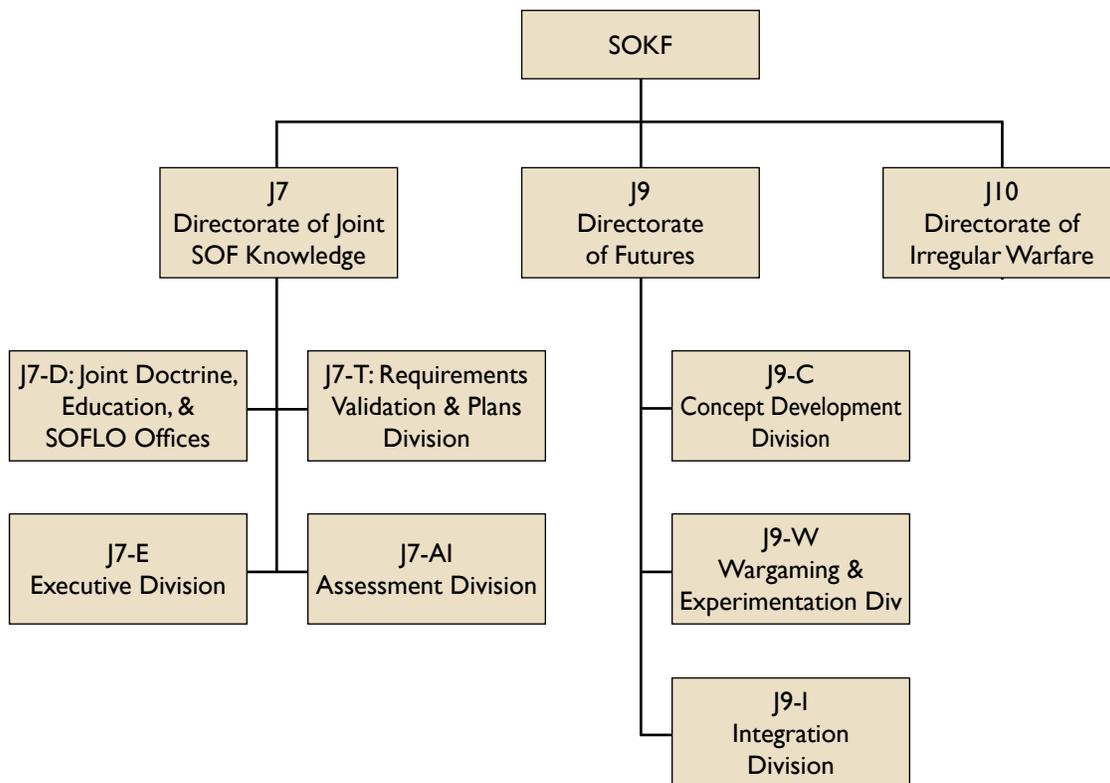


Figure 2-7. Center for Special Operations Knowledge and Futures (J7/J9/J10) (SOKF)

**Center for Special Operations  
Financial Management (SOFM)**

SOFM advises the Commander, USSOCOM, the USSOCOM staff, the SOCs, and the component

commanders on all financial management matters. The Center prepares, submits, and defends all budget products, and it analyzes the execution of the command's funding and Congressional appropriation matters.

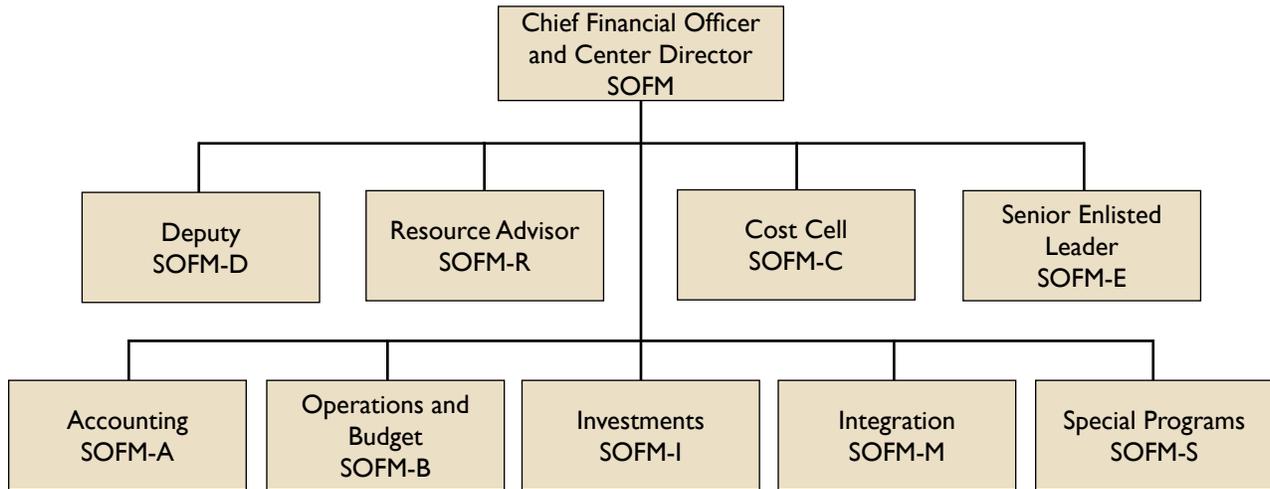


Figure 2-8. Special Operations Financial Management (SOFM)

## USSOCOM Organizations

USSOCOM is a unified command of active duty and reserve personnel. Active duty SOF elements assigned to USSOCOM are organized into four service component commands and one sub-unified command. Army SOF (Chapter 3) are structured under the U.S. Army Special Operations Command, Navy SOF (Chapter 4) are organized under the Naval Special Warfare Command, Air Force SOF (Chapter 5) are grouped under the Air Force Special Operations Command, and Marine SOF (Chapter 6) are formed under the Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command. The sub-unified command is the Joint Special Operations Command.

### *Joint Special Operations Command (JSOC)*

JSOC was established in 1980 and is located at Fort Bragg, North Carolina. JSOC is a joint headquarters designed to study special operations requirements and techniques, ensure interoperability and equipment standardization, plan and conduct joint special operations exercises and training, and develop joint special operations tactics.

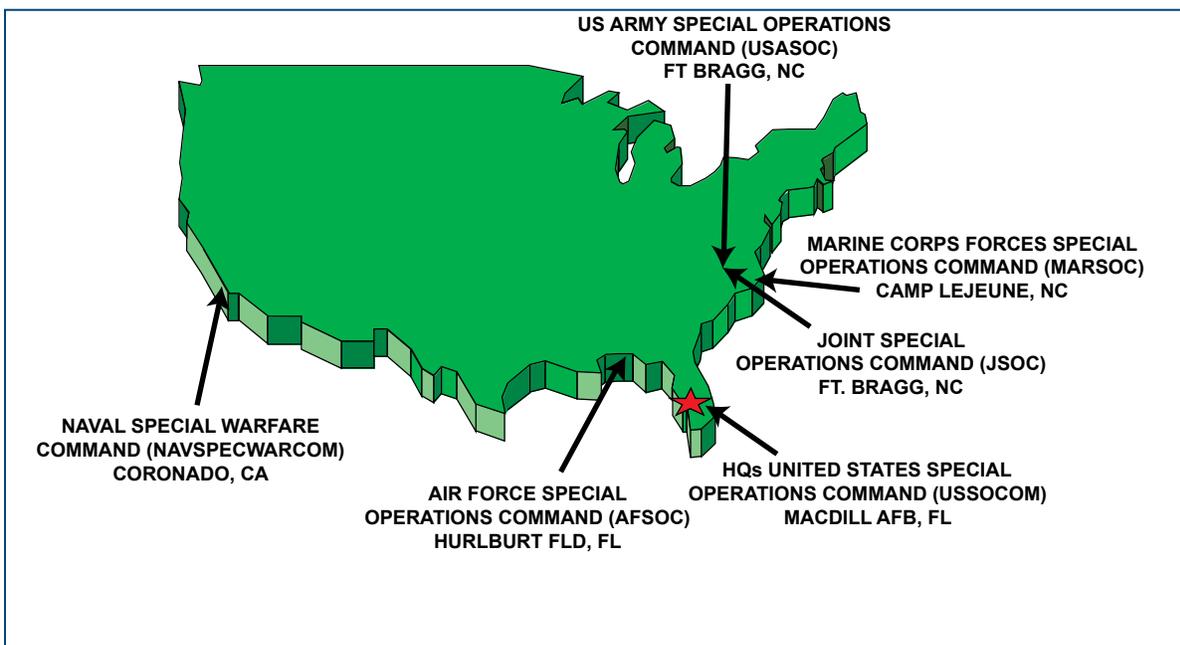


Figure 2-9. Headquarters USSOCOM and Special Operations Subordinate Command Locations

### Joint Military Information Support Command (JMISC)

JMISC was established in 2003 and formally activated in 2006 at U.S. Special Operations Command, Tampa, Florida. Formerly known as the Joint PSYOP Support Element (JPSE), JMISC is spearheading DoD’s information battle by developing programs and products designed to influence approved, large-scale foreign audiences in support of U.S. objectives in areas that cross geographic combatant command boundaries.

Shortly after 11 September 2001, the OSD stated a need for a strategic PSYOP capability within the DoD. The Defense Planning Guidance (FY 2004-2009) tasked Commander, USSOCOM to create a “Strategic PSYOP Force.” The 2003 DoD Information Operations Roadmap directed the creation of “a Joint PSYOP Support element.” The JPSE was renamed the JMISC on November 2007 to better characterize the strategic mission to support the interagency, OSD, and the GCCs.

#### JMISC Mission

JMISC plans, coordinates, integrates, and, on order, executes trans-regional psychological operations to

promote U.S. goals and objectives. JMISC operates by, with, and through the GCCs and works closely with the interagency and Country Teams to identify the right means to connect with segments of the foreign population that the U.S. is most interested in reaching. JMISC consists of functional, cultural, and geographical experts that bring a “combined arms” approach to tackling what has become a tough, entrenched information war.

#### JMISC Characteristics

- a. One of two brigade-level PSYOP units assigned to USSOCOM
- b. Comprised largely of senior military and civilian PSYOP personnel
- c. Provides professional analysis and planning
- d. Provides commercial-quality PSYOP prototype development
- e. Develops DoD trans-regional PSYOP plans and can assist in developing COCOM/JTF Strategic Communication, IO, and PSYOP plans
- f. Coordinates trans-regional dissemination, ensuring integration with deployed PSYOP units.

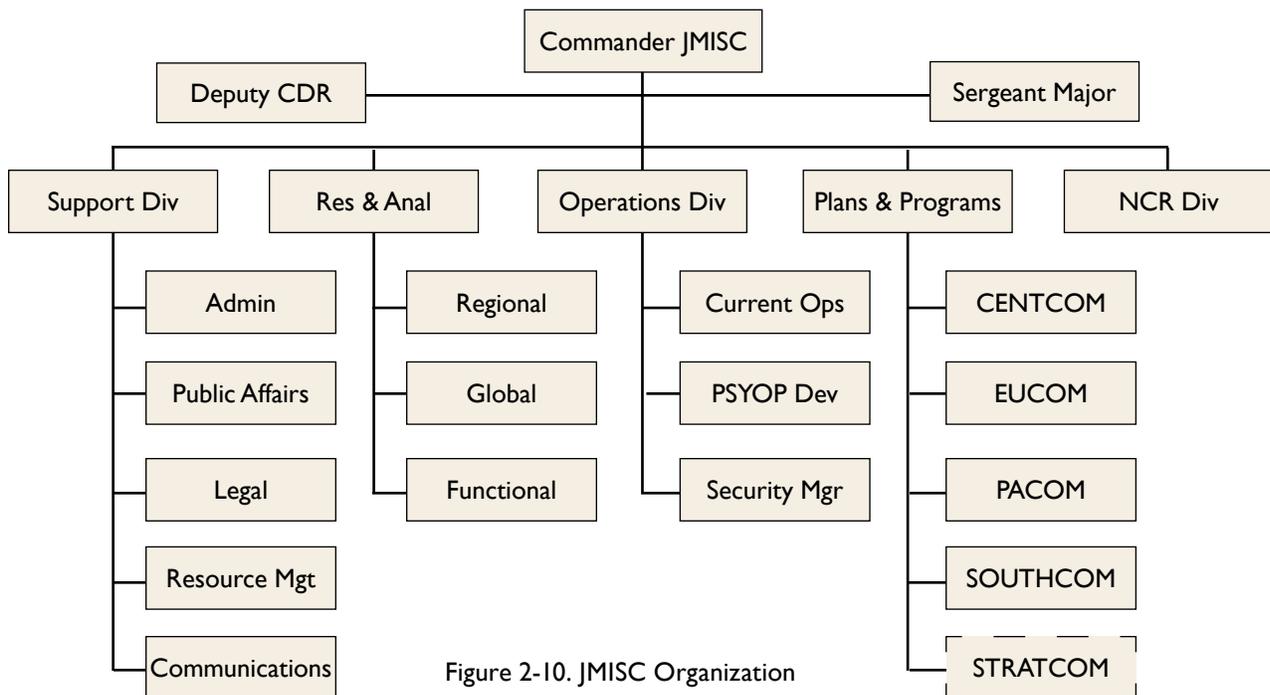


Figure 2-10. JMISC Organization

## Joint Special Operations University (JSOU)

JSOU is an academic institution that provides a full spectrum of educational programs to enhance the SOF warriors' ability to think and effectively interact at both the operational and strategic levels.

Headquartered at Hurlburt Field, Florida and collocated with the USAF Special Operations School, JSOU is a direct reporting, subordinate element of USSOCOM. JSOU is the designated agency within USSOCOM for joint SOF education and their corporate university.

JSOU has a long-term commitment to education. As an institution of the future, JSOU has worked vigorously to meet the challenges of SOF leaders by adapting to changing global environment with new and innovative curriculum, instructional programs, and teaching methods.

### JSOU Mission

The JSOU mission is to:

- Develop SOF and SOF Enablers for operational and strategic leadership
- Educate military and civilian professional on the employment of SOF in a joint, interagency, and multinational environment
- Research and publish on national security issues critical to the SOF community.

### JSOU History

In September 2000, JSOU was established as an institution of higher learning focused on joint special operations education. General Peter Schoomaker, former Commander, USSOCOM, envisioned JSOU to support specific educational requirements for SOF and non-SOF decision makers.

Figure 2-11. Leadership Competencies provide the basis of JSOU's SOF certificate program

## JSOU Organization

JSOU is organized around its three educational pillars.

**Operational Studies Department.** The core elements of this pillar are:

- Educational support to SOF Chairs and SOF faculty at Professional Military Education Institutions
- Professional development and tailored SOF education at USSOCOM HQ, component HQs, and Theater Special Operations Commands
- SOF educational integration support to NATO School
- Joint Military Education Teams.

**Strategic Studies Department.** The core elements of this pillar are:

- Interagency Program
- International Engagement
- Research and Publications
- Senior Service College and Support.

**Academics Department.** The core elements of this pillar are:

- Faculty Development
- Institutional Effectiveness
- Curriculum Management
- Information Technology
- Video Tele-Instruction.



## Theater Special Operations Commands (TSOCs) and the Special Operations Division (SOD)

Since 1988 each of the theater unified commands has established a separate Special Operations Command (SOC) to meet its theater-unique special operations requirements. Each theater SOC (TSOC) reports directly to its geographic combatant commander, while COMUSSOCOM provides TSOC funding and personnel.

As subordinate unified commands, the TSOCs provide the planning, preparation, and command and control of SOF from the Army, Navy, and Air Force. They ensure SOF strategic capabilities are fully employed and SOF are fully synchronized with conventional military operations, when applicable.

TSOCs offer several advantages to the geographic combatant commanders. As peacetime elements, the TSOCs are the nuclei around which Joint Special Operations Task Forces (JSOTFs) can be structured. TSOCs also provide a clear chain of command for in-theater SOF as well as the staff expertise to plan, conduct, and support joint SO in the theater's area of responsibility. These special operations may include forces under operational control (OPCON) to a TSOC. TSOCs normally exercise OPCON of SOF within each geographic combatant commander's area

of responsibility. Additionally, the TSOCs ensure that SOF personnel fully participate in theater mission planning and that theater component commanders are thoroughly familiar with SOF operational and support requirements and capabilities.

There are eight TSOCs, five supporting geographic combatant commanders and two with different missions. There is also a Special Operations Division, with functions similar to the TSOCs. They are as follows:

- a. Special Operations Command, Joint Forces Command
- b. Special Operations Command, Central Command
- c. Special Operations Command, Europe
- d. Special Operations Command, Pacific
- e. Special Operations Command, Korea
- f. Special Operations Command, Southern Command
- g. Special Operations Command, Africa Command
- h. Special Operations Division, U.S. Northern Command.

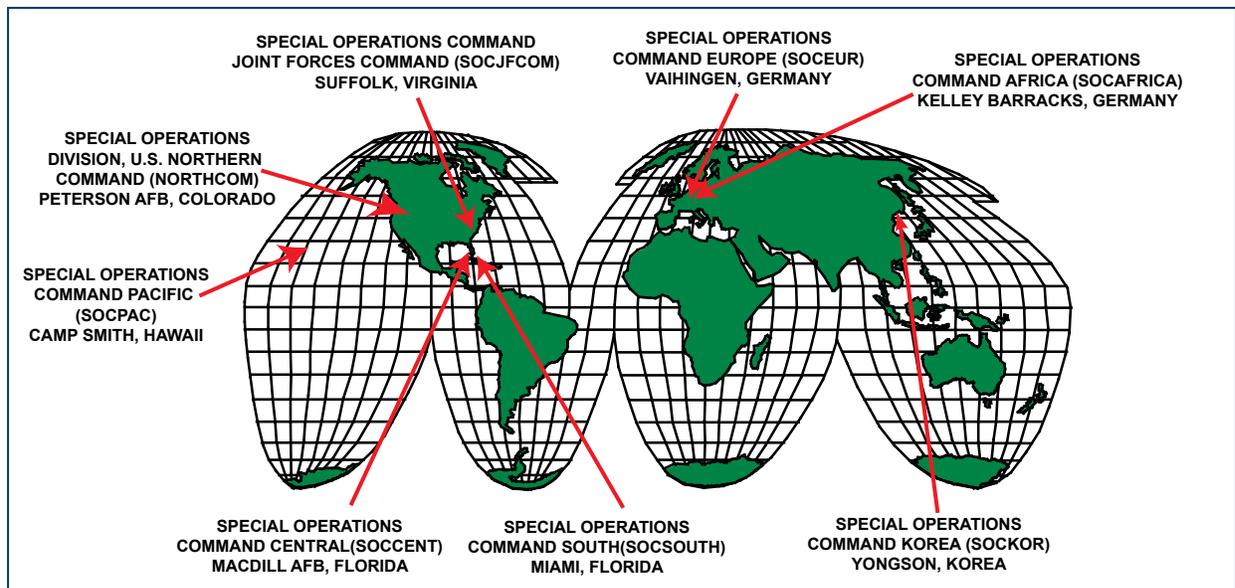


Figure 2-12. Worldwide Special Operations Command Locations

### ***Special Operations Command, Joint Forces Command (SOCJFCOM)***

SOCJFCOM is a subordinate unified command of U.S. Joint Forces Command (USJFCOM), headquartered at Suffolk, Virginia.

SOCJFCOM conducts worldwide joint SOF training and facilitates joint integration to enhance the effectiveness and interoperability of SOF in joint, multinational, and interagency environments. Additionally, as a TSOC, SOCJFCOM conducts special operations as directed by Commander, USJFCOM.

The SOCJFCOM mission and key tasks include the following:

- a. Train conventional joint forces (geographic combatant command and Joint Task Force staffs) in SOF employment considerations
- b. Support the training programs of joint SOF commanders and staffs to enhance warfighting readiness
- c. Ensure training insights are incorporated into USJFCOM and USSOCOM joint concept development and experimentation (JCD&E) and joint interoperability efforts
- d. Provide dedicated SOF subject-matter-expert support to USJFCOM JCD&E activities
- e. Facilitate USJFCOM-USSOCOM interaction and cooperation in all aspects of developmental activities to include JCD&E, research, development, and joint interoperability and integration (JI&I).

### ***Special Operations Command, Central Command (SOCCENT)***

SOCCENT, headquartered at MacDill AFB, Florida, is a subordinate unified command of U.S. Central Command (USCENTCOM). It also has a forward headquarters, the Combined Forces Special Operations Component Command (CFSOCC), in Qatar. SOCCENT is responsible for planning special operations throughout the USCENTCOM area of responsibility (AOR); planning and conducting peacetime joint/combined special operations training exercises; and orchestrating command and control

of peacetime and wartime special operations as directed. SOCCENT exercises operational control of assigned and attached SOF, which deploy for training and for operational missions in the USCENTCOM AOR as directed by Commander, CENTCOM. When directed by Commander, CENTCOM, SOCCENT forms the nucleus of a JSOTF.

SOCCENT is organized and aligned along traditional joint operational lines with a command group, six numbered/functional directorates (J1, J2, J3, J4, J6 and J8) and a headquarters command section.

Specific SOCCENT mission tasks include:

- a. Assist and advise Commander, CENTCOM on all matters pertaining to special operations in the USCENTCOM AOR
- b. Develop partner nation counter terrorism and counter insurgency capacity
- c. Conduct Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS)-directed exercises
- d. Plan and conduct humanitarian assistance and civic actions with countries receptive to U.S. military presence
- e. Plan, conduct, and evaluate other joint exercises, mobile training teams (MTTs), deployments for training (DFT), and joint and combined exchange training (JCET) in support of theater, regional, and country strategies.

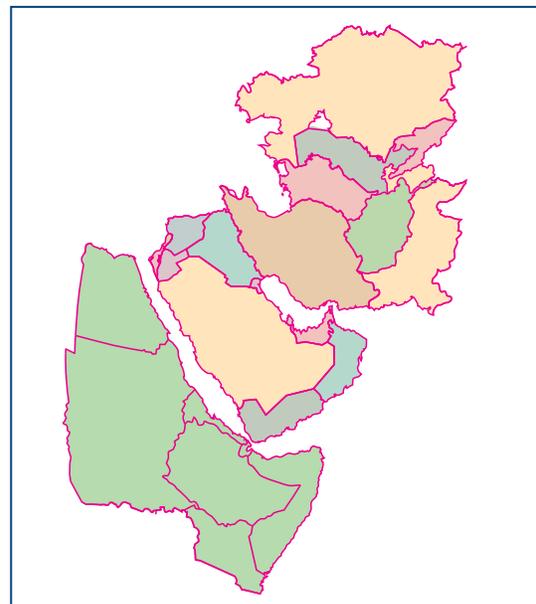


Figure 2-13. SOCCENT

### *Special Operations Command, Europe (SOCEUR)*

SOCEUR is a functional subordinate unified command of U.S. European Command (USEUCOM), headquartered at Vaihingen, Germany. Under COCOM of USEUCOM, SOCEUR's primary responsibility is to exercise operational control over theater-assigned or attached Army, Navy, Air Force, or Marine SOF conducting operational missions or training in the USEUCOM AOR.

Commander, SOCEUR (COMSOCEUR), is one of five commanders (along with U.S. Army, Europe; U.S. Air Forces in Europe; Naval Forces, Europe; and Marine Corps Forces, Europe) in the USEUCOM AOR who may be designated to establish or lead a European Joint Task Force (JTF) to plan, coordinate, and conduct military operations in support of USEUCOM or the Supreme Allied Commander Europe (SACEUR). During selected wartime and contingency operations, COMSOCEUR is routinely tasked by Commander, USEUCOM (CDRUSEUCOM) to establish a JSOTF and deploy to forward locations to provide command, control, communications, and intelligence (C3I) for assigned U.S. and allied SOF as required. COMSOCEUR has a SACEUR-directed North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) role as Director of the NATO SOF Coordination Centre (NSCC) in Mons, Belgium.

SOCEUR is organized as a conventional joint staff with a command group and seven J-coded

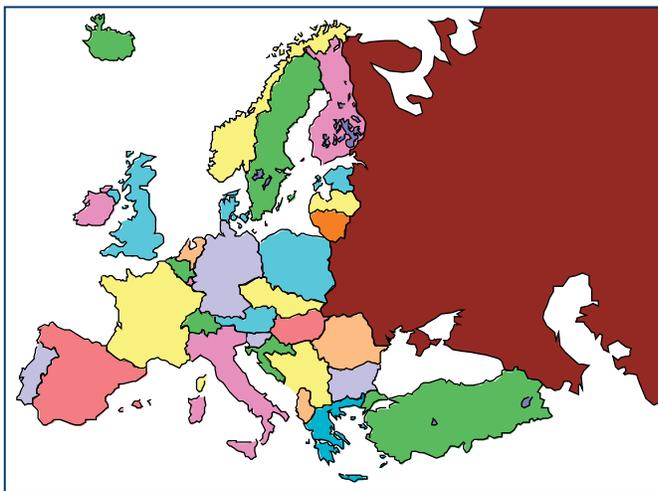


Figure 2-14. SOCEUR

functional directorates. SOCEUR exercises control of one Army Special Forces Battalion, one Air Force Special Operations Group with two subordinate Air Force Special Operations Squadrons and one Air Force Special Tactics Squadron, one Naval Special Warfare Unit, and a Signal Support Detachment. SOCEUR also maintains proponentcy for CA and PSYOP.

#### **Key Tasks**

- a. COMSOCEUR is CDRUSEUCOM's principal advisor on special operations mission priorities, force structure and apportionment, command and control, joint and bilateral training, readiness requirements, and employment of forces.
- b. Develop supporting plans and annexes for USEUCOM operations plans (OPLANS), contingency plans (CONPLANS), and functional CDRUSEUCOM-directed operational tasks.
- c. Exercise operational control (OPCON) and ensure readiness of all EUCOM-assigned and allocated SOF in theater. Conduct EUCOM- or JCS-directed exercises to ensure readiness.
- d. Plan and conduct EUCOM-directed host-nations training, development, and professional military-to-military contacts (MTT, JCET, DFT, JCTP, etc.) with European armed forces.
- e. Coordinate with USEUCOM service component commanders and SOF service component commanders to assure maximum economy in the utilization of U.S. special operations resources and elimination of unnecessary duplication and nonessential activities.
- f. Be prepared to deploy a 6–10 person EUCOM Survey and Assessment Team (ESAT) within 6 hours, and a follow-on SOF Headquarters within 18 hours.
- g. Establish and maintain close coordination and dialogue with service components, subordinate USEUCOM commands, Allied Command Europe, U.S. Special Operations Command, and the NATO SOF Coordination Centre.

### Special Operations Command, Pacific (SOCPAC)

As U.S. Pacific Command's (USPACOM's) Theater Special Operations Command, SOCPAC coordinates, plans, and directs special operations and related activities in the Pacific Theater. This supports Commander, USPACOM objectives of deterring aggression, advancing regional security cooperation, responding to crises, and fighting to win. SOCPAC's main effort is Joint Special Operations Task Force-Philippines (JSOTF-P), whose mission is to advise and assist the Armed Forces of the Philippines (AFP) in counterterrorism activities. SOCPAC's intent is to help the AFP become an increasingly professional and capable security force dedicated to supporting civil authority and human rights, and capable of defeating terrorist and insurgent threats.

The Commander, SOCPAC is the advisor for special operations on the PACOM staff. The staff is organized with a command group, six directorates (SOJ1-SOJ6), and is augmented by the Joint Intelligence Support Element (JISE/JICPAC) and a detachment from the 112th Signal Battalion.

Part of SOCPAC's capability is based around Joint Task Force (JTF) 510, a rapidly deployable JTF Headquarters, which is nested within the command. JTF 510 provides the USPACOM commander with the ability to quickly establish command and control in support of emerging crises, such as disaster relief for tsunamis or earthquakes, humanitarian assistance for civil strife or non-combatant evacuation operations (NEO), or threat situations involving terrorist incidents.

SOCPAC's assigned forces are composed of one Army Special Forces Battalion, one Naval Special Warfare Unit, and one Air Force Special Operations Group which includes two Air Force Special

Operations Squadrons and one Air Force Special Tactics Squadron. Additionally, SOCPAC maintains a Joint Special Operations Air Component (JSOAC) in Hawaii and a forward-based Joint Special Operations Air Detachment (JSOAD).

SOCPAC's strategy rests on a synchronized concept of operations called the Indirect Approach. The Indirect Approach focuses on three lines of operation: increasing partner nation security capacity, improving information gathering and sharing, and securing the support of the population. Specific tools used by SOCPAC in support of these lines of operations include the following:

- a. Joint and Combined Exchange Training (JCET)
- b. Counternarcotics Training (CNT)
- c. Foreign Internal Defense (FID)
- d. Subject Matter Expert Exchange (SMEE)
- e. Humanitarian Assistance/ Disaster Relief
- f. Humanitarian Civic Action Programs
- g. Humanitarian Mine Action (HMA)
- h. Information Operations and Public Affairs
- i. Pacific Area Special Operations Conference (PASOC)
- j. Joint Chiefs of Staff/USPACOM Exercises.

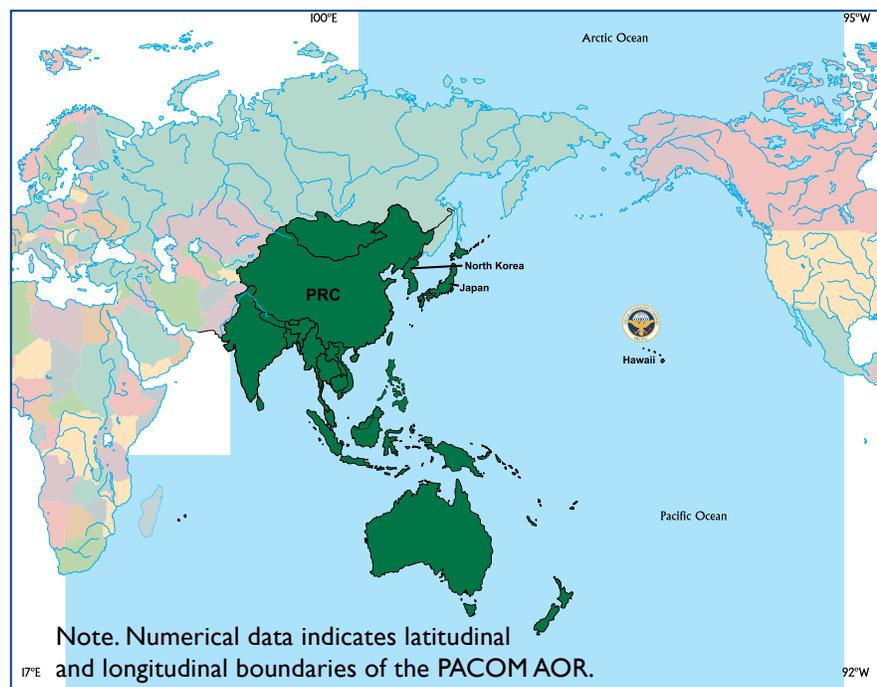


Figure 2-15. SOCPAC

### *Special Operations Command, Korea (SOCKOR)*

Operating under armistice in Yongson, Korea, SOCKOR is the special operations functional component command of U.S. Forces Korea (USFK). SOCKOR is responsible for planning, coordinating, and conducting joint and combined special operations in the Commander, USFK (COMUSKOREA) area of operations (AO) in support of the Commander, United Nations Command/Republic of Korea (ROK)-United States Combined Forces Command (UNC-CFC).

In armistice, SOCKOR is established as a traditional joint headquarters with a command group and six directorates augmented by the 112 Signal Battalion, Detachment-Korea and an Air Liaison Element (ALE). It exercises OPCON of the Special Forces Detachment 39 and tactical control (TACON) of other U.S. SOF units training in Korea. SOCKOR helps build ROK capacity via three lines of operation:

- a. Conducting joint and combined training, using the JCET program and JCS exercises
- b. Developing ROK capabilities, using a SOF Doctrinal Conference and CA and PSYOP JCETs with the ROK Ministry of National Defense
- c. Operating SF Detachment 39, which sends an liaison officer to each ROK SF Brigade and Group and enhances US/ROK interoperability by training, advising, and assisting.

Focused primarily on deterrence and preparation for warfighting, SOCKOR is the only theater

SOC in which U.S. and allied SOF are institutionally organized for combined SO. If hostilities resume in Korea, elements of SOCKOR and the ROK Army Special Warfare Command, Republic of Korea Naval Special Warfare Brigade, and the Republic of Korea Air Force Special Operations Squadron will establish the Combined Forces Command (CFC) Combined Unconventional Warfare Task Force (CUWTF). CUWTF is commanded by a ROK Lieutenant General, with the SOCKOR Commander as his deputy.



Figure 2-16. SOCKOR

## Special Operations Command, Southern Command (SOCSOUTH)

SOCSOUTH is a subordinate unified command of U.S. Southern Command (USSOUTHCOM), headquartered at Miami, Florida. SOCSOUTH has OPCON of Army, Navy, and Air Force SOF, which deploy forward for the training and operational missions in the USSOUTHCOM AOR. SOCSOUTH provides command and control for Army and Air Force SOF. SOCSOUTH forms and deploys a JSOTF headquarters providing C3I connectivity during contingencies and, when directed, has forces OPCON to SOCSOUTH; one Army Special Forces Company, one Army Special Operations Aviation Company, and one Naval Special Warfare Unit.

In peacetime, SOCSOUTH is organized as a conventional joint staff with a command group and seven numbered functional directorates J1 through J6 and J8. In wartime, the SOC adds an eighth functional directorate for the headquarters commandant.

**Mission.** SOCSOUTH plans, directs, and executes special operations missions throughout the USSOUTHCOM area of responsibility to achieve operational and strategic objectives in support of the USSOUTHCOM'S Regional War on Terrorism and Theater Security Cooperation Plan.

Note. Numerical data indicates latitudinal and longitudinal boundaries of the SOUTHCOM AOR.

SOCSOUTH core tasks include the following:

- a. Command and control of SOF in theater
  - Develop and execute SOF Campaigns
  - Fight the SOF fight daily
- b. Build, equip and advise appropriate Partner Nation GWOT capacity
- c. Establish and Command Joint Special Operations Task Force
- d. Contingency Response Force
- e. Develop and execute engagement to promote favorable relationships.

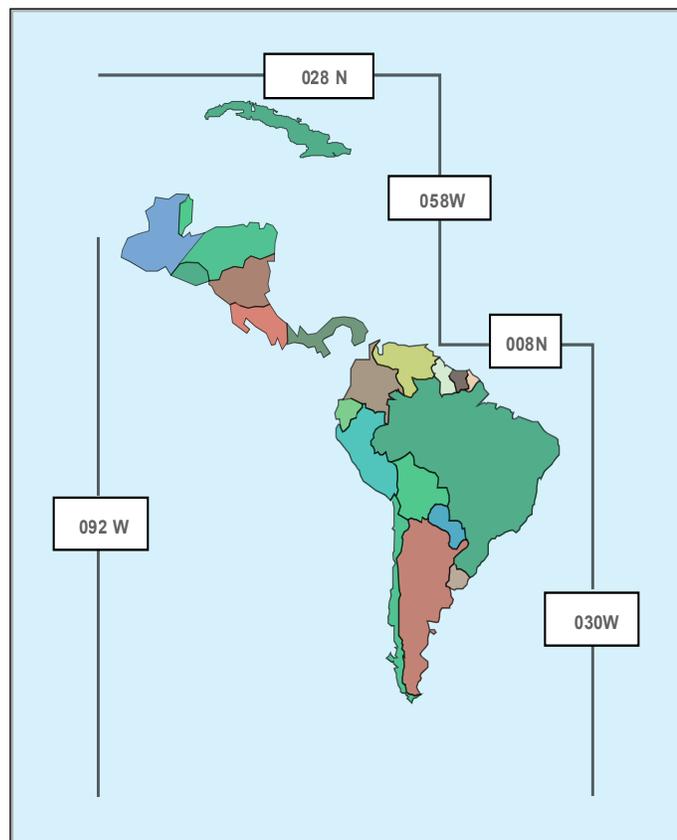


Figure 2-17. SOCSOUTH

## Special Operations Command, Africa Command (SOCAFRICA)

The newest of the TSOs, SOCAFRICA was established 1 October, 2007, and is expected to be fully operation-capable by 31 March 2009.

SOCAFRICA is a subordinate unified command of U.S. Africa Command (AFRICOM), and is currently headquartered in Stuttgart, Germany. The Commander of SOCAFRICA (COMSOCAFRICA) is a Brigadier General, and functions as the director of the Africa Command Special Operations Directorate.

### Mission

SOCAFRICA leads, plans, coordinates, and as directed, executes the full spectrum of special operations by, with, through, or in support of U.S. government departments and agencies, partner nations and other organizations as part of an integrated theater strategy, in order to promote regional stability, combat terrorism, and advance U.S. strategic objectives in the AFRICOM AOR.

### Vision

SOCAFRICA's approach is different from the traditional approach to special operations headquarters. SOCAFRICA will fully integrate interagency partner nation capabilities into planning and execution of operations. SOCAFRICA will support, facilitate, and/or leverage existing civilian and military capabilities and actors in the AFRICOM AOR.

The primary focus of the command is on SOF missions that develop partner capacity, provide assistance, and support theater security cooperation objectives.



Figure 2-18.  
SOCAFRICA

SOCAFRICA either as a lead or in support of partner nations will:

- a. Build operational capacity and capability
- b. Strengthen regional security and capacity initiatives
- c. Leverage strategic communications
- d. Eradicate violent extremist organizations and their supporting networks.

### Organization

SOCAFRICA is organized differently from a typical staff directorate.

The headquarters will have a Political Advisor assigned from the State Department, along with the Deputy Commander, Chief of Staff, and Command Sergeant Major.

SOCAFRICA is organized into 3 subordinate elements: a Support Section, a Regional Operations Section, and a Theater Operations Section.

- a. The Support Section includes the Surgeon, Human Resources, Resource Management, Resource Allocation, SJA, and PAO cells.
- b. Subordinate to the Director of Regional Operations are the Current Operations JOC, 3 SOTFs, 1 SOCCE, and an Interagency Group. Regional groups are broken down to cover 5 specific regions within Africa, nesting with the approach taken by AFRICOM. Regional Operations is largely focused on current operations and building regional subject matter expertise.
- c. Subordinate to the Director of Theater Operations are the Joint Intelligence Operations Center (JIOC), Signal Center, Logistics Section, and an Engagement and Plans Division which includes a Strategy cell, Information Operations, Civil Affairs, Security Assistance and a Joint Personnel Recovery Center Cells. There is lateral coordination between the JIOC and the JOC. The Theater Operations section is focused both upward, ensuring coordination with the TCC (AFRICOM) and the Interagency, and inwardly on the Regional Teams, providing enablers and support to the teams as needed.

### *USNORTHCOM Special Operations Division (SOD)*

The U.S. Northern Command (USNORTHCOM) SOD is a staff division within the J3 Operations Directorate, located at Peterson Air Force Base, Colorado. The USNORTHCOM mission is to anticipate and conduct Homeland Defense and Civil Support operations within the assigned AOR to defend, protect, and secure the United State and its interests. The AOR encompasses the foreign environment (Canada and Mexico), the domestic environment (continental United States and Alaska), and maritime approaches.

USNORTHCOM, unlike other geographic combatant commands, does not have an assigned TSOC. The SOD fills the role of a TSOC by serving as the theater special operations advisor to the Commander, USNORTHCOM and by integrating special operations into theater plans and operations. The SOD's roles and responsibilities have expanded since June 2002 when the USNORTHCOM Implementation Plan established an MFP-2 resourced SOD to perform special operations staff functions. The volume and urgency of developing and implementing critical war on terrorism (WOT) plans, as well as planning, monitoring and assessing special operations, activities and actions (e.g. Joint Combined Exchange Training, Subject Matter Expert Exchanges, and Integrated Surveys) have contributed to expanding the SOD's role.

#### *SOD Mission*

As directed by the USNORTHCOM J3, the SOD integrates special operations equities throughout USNORTHCOM plans, exercises and resources; executes special operations activities and actions within the area of responsibility; and synchronizes the command's GWOT efforts with USSOCOM to achieve the USNORTHCOM Commander's objectives.

The SOD's ultimate purpose is to combine special operations, activities, and actions to defend the homeland against asymmetric threats. The SOD integrates special

operations throughout the continuum of missions, serves as the command's synchronization linkage to USSOCOM for the GWOT, and is organized to plan, exercise and execute in accordance with the campaign's direct and indirect approach strategy. This is a coordinated effort within the command, other federal agencies and departments, and our Mexican and Canadian special operations partners. The SOD's goal is to create and maintain a robust network of relationships and rapid planning and execution capabilities that result in successful operations, actions and activities to defeat terrorist threats and support the command's broader objectives in our AOR.

The SOD consists of 25 personnel (military, government employees, and contractors) with Army, Air Force and Navy special operations expertise. The SOD is an integral component to the battle staff and leads several key USNORTHCOM teams, boards, and cells to include the Counterterrorism Assessment Team (CTAT), the WOT Synchronization Team, the WOT Assessment Board, the Counterterrorism Joint Targeting Coordination Board (CT-JTCB), and the Compartmented Plans and Operations Cell (CPOC). The SOD also hosts the USSOCOM and JSOC liaison officers, and maintains strong ties to the command's interagency representatives. USNORTHCOM views the SOD as key to its Homeland Defense mission.



Figure 2-19. USNORTHCOM

## SOF Operational Command and Control

During operations, three types of SOF joint task forces may be formed to support a joint force commander in the command and control of assigned SOF:

- a. Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF)
- b. Joint Psychological Operations Task Force (JPOTF)
- c. Joint Civil Military Operations Task Force (JCMOTF).

These JTFs are organized along the lines of a conventional JTF and normally are established to accomplish a specific mission or conduct a campaign of limited duration. SOF JTFs are flexible in size, composition, and duration of establishment. A SOF JTF may be small and temporary, or larger and more enduring, depending on the national objective or theater mission assigned.

### *Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF)*

A JSOTF is a temporary joint SOF headquarters, composed of units from more than one service, established by the President and/or SecDef or a JFC to accomplish a specific mission or to control SOF in a specific theater of operations. A JSOTF may have conventional non-special-operations units assigned or attached to support the conduct of specific missions.

### *Creation of and Transition to a JSOTF*

Under most circumstances, a geographic combatant commander will direct his SOC to form a JSOTF. That JSOTF might be deployed and employed in advance of the JTF or multinational force, of which it will eventually become a part, or the JSOTF and the multinational force might be organized concurrently.

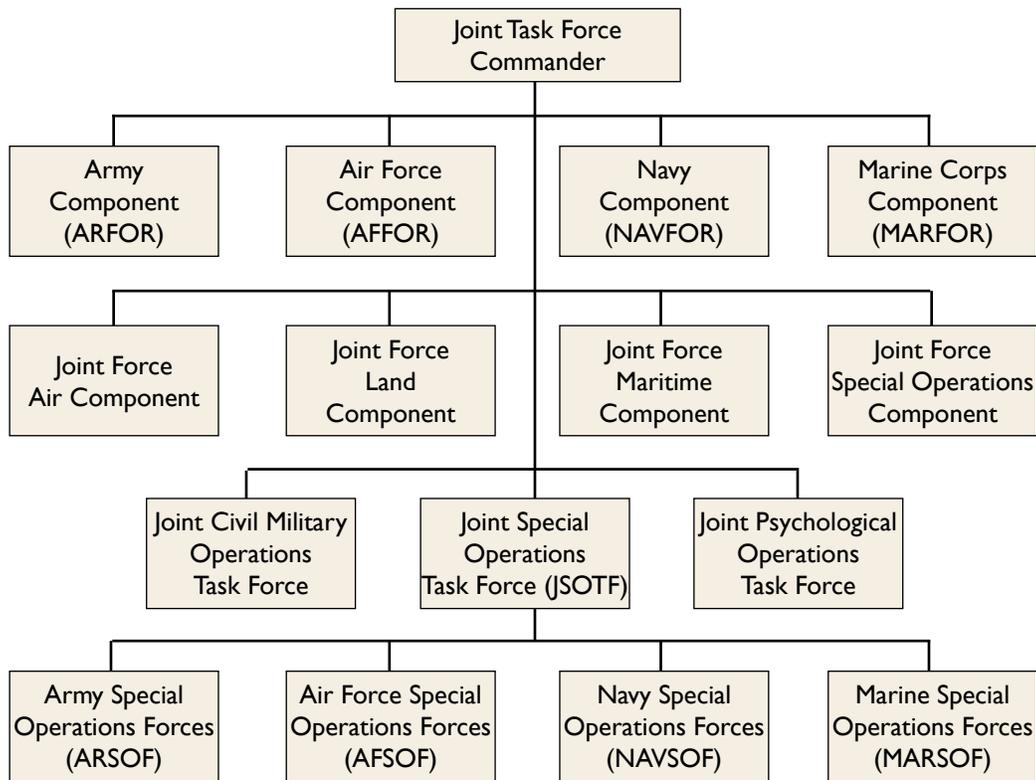


Figure 2-20. Generic Organization of a Joint Task Force (JTF)

### Generic Organization of a JSOTF

A JSOTF does not have a fixed organization; it is task-organized. A JSOTF is an organization flexible in both size and composition, and that flexibility provides its primary utility. The headquarters usually will be able to perform normal command and staff functions, but it may rely on non-SOF elements for certain staff activities. JSOTF HQs vary in size as well as scope of mission.

A JSOTF is organized in a manner similar to conventional task forces, and JSOTF HQs normally are organized internally along service component or functional lines i.e., J1 through J6, and ARSOF, NAVSOF, and AFSOF. JSOTFs normally are organized to meet a specific SO mission or an operation of limited duration, although they may be formed as standing organizations, depending upon Presidential and/or SecDef, theater command, or JTF guidance.

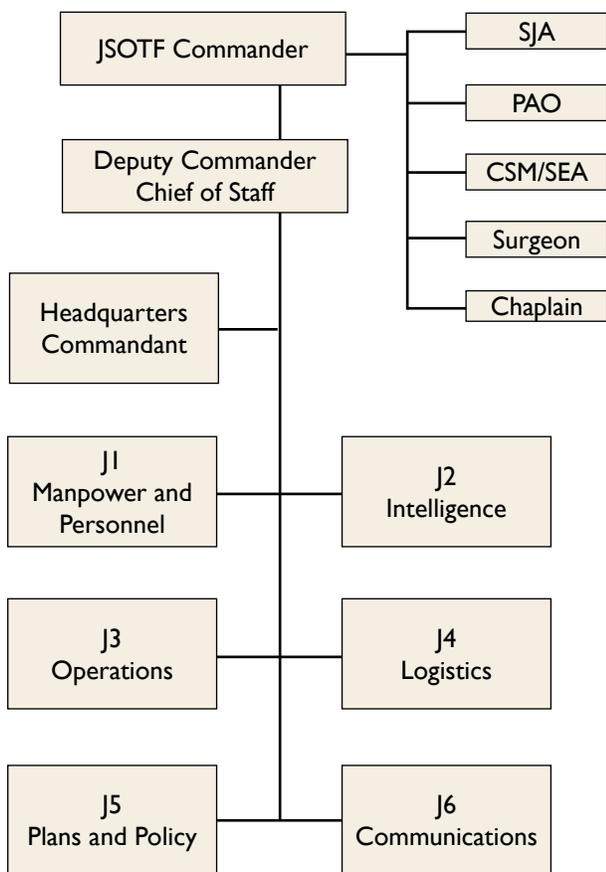


Figure 2-21. Generic Organization of a JSOTF Headquarters

Establishing a JSOTF is appropriate when SOF command and control requirements exceed the capabilities of the TSOC staff. JSOTF HQs are normally formed around elements from the TSOC or an existing SOF unit with augmentation from other Service SOF. Also, a JSOTF may be deployed as a complete package from outside the theater. This can be done to provide an additional JSOTF for the regional combatant commander or to relieve the SOC from the responsibility of organizing a JSOTF.

When subordinate to a Joint Task Force Commander other than the TSOC, the JSOTF commander serves as the Joint Force Special Operations Component Commander (JFSOCC). Normally the JFSOCC exercises day-to-day C2 of assigned or attached SOF. The JFSOCC allocates forces against strategic or operational tasks and supports other JTF component commanders based on guidance from the Commander, Joint Task Force (CJTF). Additionally, other responsibilities of the JFSOCC are to:

- a. Make recommendations on the proper employment of special operations forces and assets
- b. Plan and coordinate special operations
- c. Synchronize the conduct of special operations with the other component commanders.

Deconfliction, coordination, and transfer of forces are always critical concerns for SO commanders, regardless of organizational status. Deconfliction and coordination activities routinely include target deconfliction, communications frequency allocation, surface and airspace deconfliction, fire support coordination, and coordination for logistics support.

SOF must be compatible with conventional forces that either host or support their activities. This is especially true during time-critical contingency planning operations. For example, if SOF are operating from naval surface vessels during forced-entry operations, they must be prepared to function compatibly with the host vessel. Weapons and communications must be deconflicted with ship systems, and SOF helicopters must be compatible with shipboard fuel systems. Likewise, the conventional force commander must be sensitive to his own operations, which may require modification so as not to inhibit the operation of SOF.

### *JSOTF Support Relationships*

In many contingency operations, JSOTF HQs have been established for command and control. SOF have been deployed and employed well in advance of conventional force elements. Coordinating the transition from special operations to conventional operations, when ordered, is crucial. Such coordination of conventional and special operations ensures the timing and tempo of the overall unified campaign is maintained.

Only the President and/or SecDef can authorize and direct the assignment of forces to combatant commands or their transfer between combatant commands. When transfer of forces is permanent, the forces are reassigned. When transfer of forces is temporary, the forces may be either reassigned or attached. If the forces are reassigned, the gaining combatant commander exercises COCOM of the reassigned force. If the forces are attached, the President and/or SecDef normally specifies in the deployment order that the gaining combatant commander will exercise OPCON of the attached force.

When USSOCOM forces deploy into a theater for a specific short-duration mission, these forces are normally attached to the theater combatant commander and may be placed OPCON to the JFSOCC. This requires extensive coordination when the mission is planned out of theater. Because USSOCOM must prepare the forces, it is vital that the JFSOCC clearly communicate the theater combatant commander's requirements. The JFSOCC assists the theater combatant commander in charge of OPCON of SOF from USSOCOM to theater control, coordinating transfer to theater C4I structure and arranging in-theater support, to include staging facilities. This may require coordination with other theater combatant commanders when those facilities lie within their AORs. JFSOCC planning must ultimately include force recovery and redeployment.

### *Joint Psychological Operations Task Force (JPOTF)*

A JPOTF is composed of psychological operations units from more than one service, formed to carry out PSYOP in support of a joint force commander's campaign or other contingencies. It normally serves

as a subordinate joint command of a joint force. The JPOTF exercises C2 of PSYOP forces assigned, attached, or in support from the service components and, when applicable, from other nations. Although tactical PSYOP units are usually attached to maneuver commanders, the JPOTF normally has coordinating authority with tactical forces for developing, producing, and disseminating PSYOP products. This procedure allows PSYOP forces to meet the maneuver commander's requirements more effectively, while ensuring continuity with the objectives and intent of the combatant commander or JTF commander. The JPOTF works closely with the U.S. country team, other U.S. government officials, allies and coalition officials, and international organizations.

#### *Creation of and Transition to a JPOTF*

The scale of an operation generally dictates the organization of PSYOP forces. The PSYOP organization may vary in size depending on the nature of the operation, the capability of available forces, and the supported commander's assessment of the PSYOP requirement.

As a crisis begins to develop, one of the first elements deployed to a supported commander is the PSYOP Support Element (PSE). A PSE is a tailored element that can provide limited PSYOP. The size, composition, and capability of the PSE are determined by the requirements of the supported commander. The PSE provides staff support to the operations directorate (J3) of the joint force. This small team assesses the situation, confers with the commander, develops the PSYOP objectives, and recommends an appropriate combination of personnel, equipment, and support to be provided by service components to accomplish the mission.

A Psychological Operations Task Force (POTF) supports a combatant commander or CJTF by planning the employment and use of PSYOP forces and dissemination platforms to achieve the commander's overall objectives. The POTF will determine the recommended size of PSYOP forces required, PSYOP objectives, supporting PSYOP objectives, PSYOP programs for approval in Phases I through IV of the operation, and functions as the central coordination point for all PSYOP activities.

A POTF becomes a JPOTF when established by the Secretary of Defense, the combatant commander or the commander of an existing JTF. With the addition of coalition PSYOP units, the POTF is designated a Combined Psychological Operations Task Force (CPOTF), such as the standing CPOTF in the Republic of Korea. The POTF concept allows commanders to tailor their force to meet the specific requirements of complex missions as they emerge and evolve. In either case the PSYOP task force will be under OPCON of the headquarters of which they are a component.

The combatant commander may attach PSYOP forces to a subordinate Joint Force Commander, normally a JPOTF or Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF) commander. This prevents the development of conflicting PSYOP programs and messages, and facilitates a more rapid approval process and product responsiveness. PSYOP planners will identify foreign target audiences and PSYOP objectives, themes, symbols, activities, and products

that support the JFC’s campaign plan. PSYOP have significant impact on the JFC objectives as they involve the need to mobilize the civilian population, while simultaneously isolating the adversary, taking away its ability to muster popular support. Subordinate commanders will identify requirements for PSYOP forces to the JFC. Depending on mission requirements, PSYOP staff support may be provided to the commander of a subunified command, JTF, or component command to enhance planning and coordinating capability.

*Generic Organization of a JPOTF*

The POTF, normally a task-organized PSYOP battalion, forms the basis for the senior PSYOP HQ in-theater. With appropriate augmentation, this HQ normally becomes a joint organization, referred to as a JPOTF. The JPOTF is not a standing organization and is task-organized to fit the mission. The JPOTF varies in size depending on the scope of mission. During past operations, personnel within the JPOTF

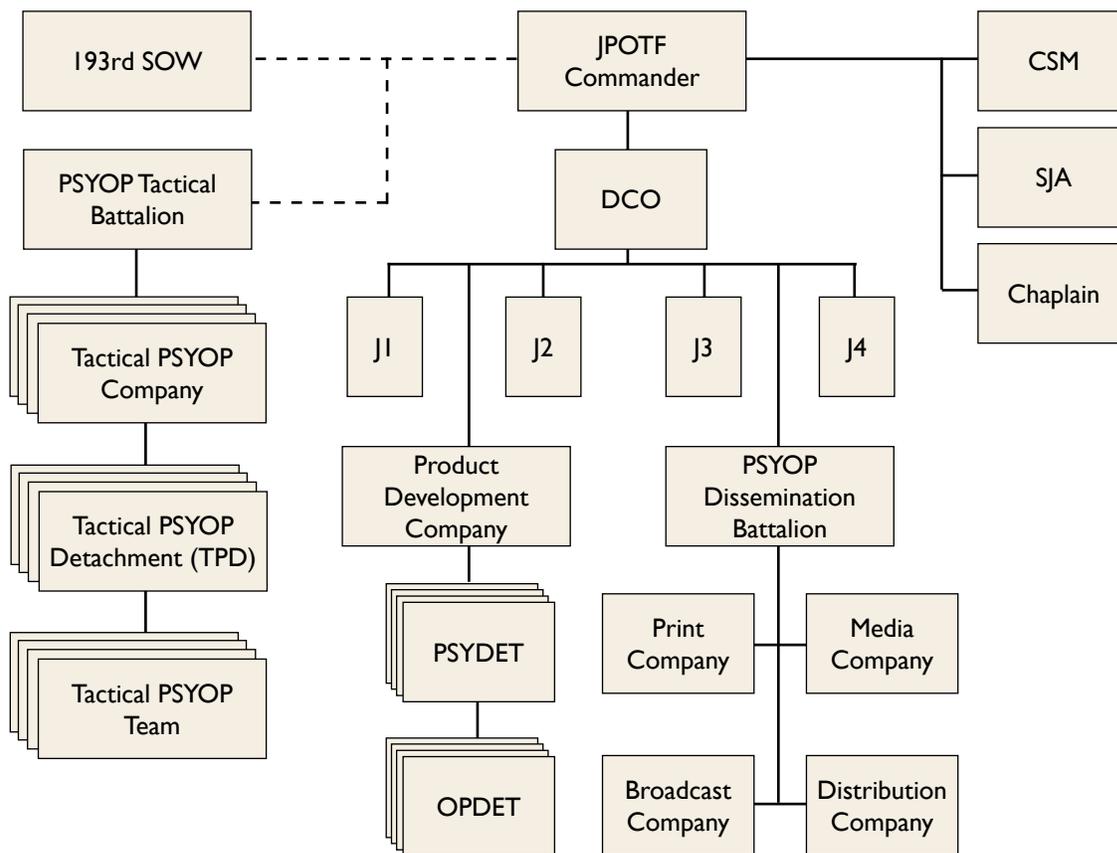


Figure 2-22. Generic JPOTF Organization

have numbered from less than 20 to more than 400. A JPOTF is an organization flexible in both size and composition, and this aspect provides its primary utility.

A JPOTF is organized in a manner similar to conventional task forces in that it is organized internally along functional lines, J1 through J4. A JPOTF is normally organized to meet a specific PSYOP mission. The establishment of a JPOTF is appropriate when PSYOP C2 requirements exceed the capabilities of the geographic combatant commander's staff or JTF staff. The JPOTF HQ is formed around elements from an existing PSYOP unit with augmentation from other Services. Usually, a JPOTF will be deployed as a complete package from outside the theater.

When subordinate to a JTF Commander, the JPOTF commander exercises day-to-day C2 of assigned or attached PSYOP forces. The commander JPOTF allocates forces against strategic or operational tasks and supports other JTF component commanders based on guidance from the Commander, Joint Task Force (CJTF). Additionally, other responsibilities of the commander JPOTF are as follows:

- a. Advise the CJTF on PSYOP
- b. Conduct Joint PSYOP Planning and Execution
- c. Issue planning guidance



A PSYOP Leaflet from  
Operations Desert Shield/Storm

- d. Analyze various courses of action
- e. Produce Joint PSYOP products
- f. Coordinate with the other subordinate task forces and components to ensure the most efficient support is provided to the CJTF
- g. Conduct Joint PSYOP dissemination operations
- h. Evaluate the results of Joint PSYOP
- i. Conduct liaison with HN agencies and other U.S. government organizations
- j. Establish combat identification procedures and other directives based on CJTF guidance.

### *Joint Civil-Military Operations Task Force (JCMOTF)*

A JCMOTF is a U.S. joint force organization, similar in organization to a JSOTF or JTF and is flexible in size and composition, depending on mission circumstances. It usually is subordinate to a JTF but, in rare instances and depending on resource availability, could be formed as a standing organization. A JCMOTF can be formed in theater, in the United States (within the limits of the law), or in both locations, depending on scope, duration, or sensitivity of the CMO requirement and associated policy considerations.

JFCs are responsible for conducting CMO and may establish a JCMOTF when the scope of CMO requires coordination and activities beyond that which a staff CA representative could accomplish. The JCMOTF will be resourced to meet the JFC's specific CMO requirements (for example, stability operations). To support the conduct of specific missions, a JCMOTF may have both conventional and special operations forces assigned or attached. By design, the U.S. Army active component CA brigade, U.S. Navy Maritime Civil Affairs Group (MCAG), or Marine Corps Civil Affairs Group (CAG) organizational structure can provide the operational C2 system structure to form a JCMOTF.

JCMOTF responsibilities typically include the following:

- a. Advising the commander, joint task force (CJTF) on policy, funding, and multinational, foreign, or host-nation sensitivities and their

- effect on theater strategy and/or campaign and operational missions
- b. Providing C2 or direction of military host-nation advisory, assessment, planning, and other assistance activities of joint U.S. forces
- c. Assisting in establishing U.S. or multinational and military-to-civil links for greater efficiency of cooperative assistance arrangements
- d. Performing essential coordination or liaison with host-nation agencies, country team, United Nations agencies, and deployed U.S. multinational, and host-nation military forces and supporting logistic organizations
- e. Assisting in the planning and conduct of civil information programs to publicize positive results and objectives of military assistance projects, to build civil acceptance and support of U.S. operations, and to promote indigenous capabilities contributing to recovery and economic-social development
- f. Planning and conducting joint and combined civil-military operations training exercises
- g. Advising and assisting in strengthening or stabilizing civil infrastructures and services and otherwise facilitating transition to peacekeeping or consolidation operations and associated hand-off to other USG agencies, international organizations, or host-nation responsibility
- h. Assessing or identifying host-nation civil support, relief, or funding requirements to the CJTF for transmission to supporting commanders, military services, or other responsible USG agencies
- i. Establishing combat identification standing operating procedures.

### *Joint Psychological Operations Command and Control*

The President and/or SecDef issues national security policy through directives and statements. During peacetime, the SecDef (or his designated representatives) translates national security policy into military policy. Because of the nature of the psychological dimension, all policy matters tend to impact upon PSYOP. During war, policy flows directly from the



A PSYOP Soldier Distributes Leaflets to Civilians in Baghdad Warning Them Not to Touch Unexploded Ordnance

President and/or SecDef through the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff to the combatant commanders. The combatant commander is responsible for the centralized direction and conduct of PSYOP within his operational area. Early and full PSYOP support to the supported commander is critical throughout the crisis action planning process.

When the SecDef approves the deployment of PSYOP personnel to perform peacetime PSYOP activities in support of theater security cooperation plans (formerly the overt peacetime Psychological Operations [PSYOP] program-[OP3]), OPCON of these forces passes from the force providing combatant command, to the supported geographic combatant command/Theater Special Operations Command. PSYOP personnel perform their mission under TACON of a U.S. Embassy. OPCON of PSYOP personnel may be passed to a JSOTF, as the supported unit.

During war, contingency, or crisis, a POTF, JPOTF, or CPOTF may be established as a functional component of the combatant commander or task force commander or as a component of a JSOTF. In either case the PSYOP task force will be under OPCON of the headquarters of which they are a component, and tactical PSYOP forces are normally attached TACON to maneuver force commanders. Tactical PSYOP units are normally attached to armies, corps, divisions, and brigade combat teams, or equivalent-sized elements. Dissemination PSYOP battalions normally operate as major subordinate units or detachments of a JPOTF.

### *Command and Control of PSYOP Assets*

PSYOP forces operate under varying C2 arrangements. The mission, the length and scope of operations, the supported GCC, and the commanders at each level determine the exact C2 structure. Psychological operations may be an integral part of joint or multinational operations, or an activity in support of other governmental agencies (OGAs).

When a JPOTF is established, tactical PSYOP forces are placed in direct support of maneuver elements. The CJTF will attach and detach tactical PSYOP forces with maneuver forces as required to support the JTF mission. Dissemination forces operate in general support of the JFC with TACON by the JPOTF commander. Multipurpose assets that are primarily PSYOP platforms, such as COMMANDO SOLO, normally remain OPCON to the Joint Special Operations Component Commander (JSOCC) or the COMJSOTF, with TACON to the JPOTF commander.

Multipurpose assets that are primarily PSYOP platforms, such as EC 130E/J Commando Solo and other aerial platforms, usually remain OPCON to their Service or functional component but are TACON to the JPOTF. In this example, upon deployment, Commando Solo is OPCON to AFSOC while also TACON to the JPOTF. A JPOTF normally has coordinating authority over operational and tactical PSYOP units. This authority allows the JPOTF to augment tactical PSYOP units and to coordinate the technical aspects of development, production, distribution, and dissemination of PSYOP to ensure unity of effort and adherence to GCC and CJTF plans.

During smaller scale operations or peacetime activities where there is no POTF or a JTF, the GCC or TSOC Commander normally exercises OPCON of the PSYOP forces (usually a PSE or MIST) through the commander of the United States military group (USMILGP) or the Office for Defense Cooperation (ODC). This intermediate commander then keeps the ambassador and the GCC informed of plans and activities during the deployment.

**Operational Control.** The GCC may exercise OPCON, or may delegate OPCON to any level of subordinate command. Inherent in OPCON are authorities similar



PSYOP Soldiers Operating in Somalia

to those contained in combatant command authority (COCOM). OPCON does not in and of itself include authoritative direction for logistics or matters of administration, discipline, internal organization, or unit training. The GCC authorities discussed do not include PSYOP approval authorities. Refer to FM 3-0 Army Operations for a detailed explanation.

**Tactical Control.** The GCC may exercise TACON or he may delegate it to any level of command subordinate to him. TACON does not include organizational authority or authoritative direction for administrative and logistic support. The establishing directive must define the specific authorities and limits of TACON. Refer to FM 3-0 Army Operations for a detailed explanation.

**Coordinating Authority.** PSYOP forces are habitually attached; therefore, coordinating authority between PSYOP elements is critical to synchronize and coordinate the PSYOP effort throughout all echelons. In the absence of coordination, contradictory messages may be disseminated, potentially compromising the effectiveness of the entire effort. Refer to FM 3-0 Army Operations for a detailed explanation.

### *Psychological Operations Mission*

Psychological Operations are planned operations to convey selected information and indicators to foreign audiences to influence their emotions, motives, objective reasoning, and ultimately the behavior of foreign government, organizations, groups, and individuals. The purpose of psychological operations is to induce or reinforce foreign attitudes and behavior favorable to the originator's objectives.

PSYOP are conducted across the operational continuum by supporting national security objectives during peacetime, contingencies, and war. They provide commanders a critical, force-multiplying capability that can be used at tactical, operational, and strategic levels of operations.

**Strategic Psychological Operations.** Strategic-level U.S. government departments and agencies conduct international information activities to influence foreign attitudes, perceptions, and behavior in favor of U.S. goals and objectives. These activities predominantly take place outside the military arena but can use DoD assets and receive support from military PSYOP forces. Strategic PSYOP play an important role in theater security cooperation (TSC) agreements by supporting U.S. country team initiatives such as counterdrug and mine awareness programs.

**Operational Psychological Operations.** Operational-level PSYOP are designed to strengthen U.S. and multinational capabilities to conduct military operations in the operational area and accomplish particular missions across the range of military operations. Along with other military operations, PSYOP may be used independently or as an integral part of other operations throughout the operational area. Operational-level PSYOP also play an important role in supporting military-to-military programs as part of TSC agreements. These initiatives have promoted military professionalization and human rights programs within host nation militaries, as well as many other programs designed to improve civil-military relations.

**Tactical Psychological Operations.** Tactical PSYOP forces provide supported commanders a nonlethal fires capability to change the behavior of a local populace or adversary force in any environment. PSYOP support encompasses the planning, analysis, development, design, approval, production, distribution, dissemination, and evaluation of PSYOP series across the operational spectrum. At the tactical level, PSYOP forces are the supported commander's most effective capability for communicating with foreign target audiences. Whether providing information during foreign humanitarian assistance (FHA) operations or

broadcasting surrender instructions while supporting combat operations, tactical PSYOP forces provide a powerful capability to the supported commander.

Commanders subordinate to CJTFs can use and modify approved series, within the guidelines issued by the higher headquarters, to achieve their specific objectives. The parameters for tactical PSYOP forces in developing, designing, producing, and disseminating are articulated in the PSYOP support plan. Typically, tactical units can use any series approved at the combatant command level. They can also develop, design, and produce series on specific areas, such as force protection or civilian noninterference, without the series being approved at joint task force level; however, the series must be approved in the initial plan signed by the SecDef. Tactical PSYOP forces can develop series outside the specific parameters, but the series must go through the same approval process used for POTF-level series.

#### *PSYOP Approval Process*

Prior to conducting PSYOP in peacetime, contingencies, or during declared war, combatant commanders (CCDRs) must have their PSYOP program or plan approved. PSYOP programs and plans are submitted to the joint staff for staffing through the Under Secretary of Defense for Policy USD(P) either as stand-alone programs or as part of a theater security cooperation plan (TSCP) or OPLAN.

In accordance with DoD Directive S 3321.1, Overt Psychological Operations Conducted by the Military Services in Peacetime and in Contingencies Short of Declared War (U), programs and plans are then coordinated with the Office of the Secretary of Defense (OSD) staff and interagency, and then forwarded for USD(P) review and approval. Coordination and approval is normally accomplished through message traffic originating from Corps/JTF or their higher headquarters through the PSYOP planners attached or assigned to them. If one of the pre-approved PSYOP programs contained in Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff Instruction (CJCSI) 3110.05C is to be exercised during a contingency, the PSYOP planner will use the authorities in CJCSI 3110.05C to plan and execute the dissemination of PSYOP products and activities. However,

these PSYOP products and activities must be approved by the supported CCDR in coordination with the Joint Chiefs of Staff (JCS). This pre-approved PSYOP program allows PSYOP planners to rapidly implement the seven-step PSYOP process to produce PSYOP products for approval without needing to first staff a PSYOP program through the JCS for approval at OSD.

However, in the event that a contingency or other operation occurs requiring PSYOP support not pre-approved under CJCSI 3110.05C, the PSYOP planner must formally staff a PSYOP program through the supported commander's staff, via official message traffic, through the JCS to OSD for approval. The PSYOP planner uses the pre-approved PSYOP programs in CJCSI 3110.05C as a template and crafts the appropriate proposed PSYOP program in message traffic using the elements of the pre-approved programs in that document. The essential elements of any PSYOP program are PSYOP objectives, a broad listing of proposed TAs, themes to stress to those TAs, themes to avoid, and the dissemination methods proposed for each TA.

### *Psychological Operations Forces*

Each military service has an inherent capability to support production and/or dissemination of PSYOP products. Joint PSYOP planning guidance is contained in the Joint Strategic Capabilities Plan (JSCP), Joint Operations Planning and Execution System (JOPES), and service doctrine. Combatant commanders and Joint Task Force commanders should address the use of all levels of PSYOP as aspects of the overall strategy for conducting operations.

### *Command Relationships*

**United States Special Operations Command.** USSOCOM is the unified combatant command for special operations, which includes active component PSYOP (the 4th Psychological Operations Group (Airborne)). The SecDef assigns active duty PSYOP forces to COMUSSOCOM, who exercises COCOM



**Tactical PSYOP Soldiers Conduct a Loudspeaker Mission During Operation RESTORE HOPE**

of assigned forces through a combination of service and joint component commanders. COMUSSOCOM prepares assigned PSYOP forces to conduct PSYOP supporting U.S. national security interests across the operational continuum. Through the Chairman of the JCS, and in coordination with the Assistant Secretary of Defense (Special Operations and Low Intensity Conflict) (ASD[SO/LIC]), COMUSSOCOM advises the President and/or SecDef and the National Security Council (NSC) on PSYOP matters. COMUSSOCOM has no geographic AOR for normal operations and is the Executive Agent for the War on Terror. The President and/or SecDef may direct COMUSSOCOM to command PSYOP forces as a supported combatant commander or to support a GCC. (Joint Publication 3-05, Doctrine for Joint Special Operations, has further information.)

Unless otherwise directed by the President and/or SecDef, combatant commanders exercise COCOM over all assigned military PSYOP assets. Because of the strategic and operational importance of the PSYOP contribution to the combatant commanders, centralized planning of PSYOP should be focused at the combatant command level. When authorized, combatant commanders may allow multinational commanders to exercise OPCON of PSYOP forces. The combatant commander may place PSYOP forces under OPCON of a subordinate joint force or component commander for appropriate mission support. PSYOP units may be integrated into multinational operations. Appropriate points of coordination and control of PSYOP activities should be established through a multinational PSYOP cell.

### ***SOF Integration with Conventional Operations and Forces***

To fully integrate with conventional operations, SOF must maintain effective liaison and coordination with all components of the joint force that may impact the conduct of SOF activities. Unity of effort among SOF and conventional forces is accomplished through a number of various integrating elements. These are described below.

**Special Operations Command and Control Element (SOCCE).** The SOCCE is a command and control element generally based on an U.S. Army Special Forces Company headquarters (SFOD-B) or a Ranger Liaison Element and usually found at a corps or Marine Air-Ground Task Force (MAGTF) level. The SOCCE integrates special operations (less PSYOP and CMO) with land or maritime operations and normally remains under the control of the JFSOCC. The SOCCE is the focal point for the synchronization and deconfliction of SOF missions with ground and maritime operations. The SOCCE collocates with the command post of the supported commander and performs C2 or liaison functions as directed by the JFSOCC. The SOCCE can also receive SOF operational, intelligence, and target acquisition reports directly from deployed SOF elements and provide them to the land force headquarters.

**Special Forces Liaison Element (SFLE).** The SFLE is a U.S. Army Special Forces or Joint SO element that conducts liaison between U.S. conventional forces division-level headquarters and subordinate HN or multinational forces brigades and battalions. It is formed only as needed. SFLEs conduct these functions when host or multinational forces have not practiced interoperability before the operation, do not share common operation procedures or communications equipment, or when a significant language or cultural barrier exists.

**Special Operations Liaison Element (SOLE).** A SOLE is a team provided by the JFSOCC or the JSOTF commander to the Joint Force Air Component Commander (JFACC) or appropriate service component air C2 organization. A SOLE is provided to coordinate, deconflict, and integrate special operations air, surface, and subsurface operations with conventional air operations.

This team is composed of operations, plans and liaison officers from the different SOF air and ground elements and is lead by a senior SOF airman known as the director. The SOLE director works directly for the JFSOCC. The SOLE director is not in the SOF chain of command, and thus command authority for mission tasking, planning, and execution of SO remains with the JFSOCC. The SOLE director places SOF ground, maritime, and air liaison personnel in divisions of the Joint Air Operations Center (JAOC) to integrate with the JFACC staff. The SOLE accomplishes the coordination, deconfliction, and integration of SOF air, surface, and subsurface operations by providing a SOF presence in the JAOC that is aware of the activities of SOF units in the field and by providing visibility of SOF operations in the air tasking order and the airspace control order. The SOLE must also coordinate appropriate fire support coordinating measures to help avoid fratricide. A notional SOLE consists of 43 personnel, but in practice is tailored as appropriate.

**Naval Special Warfare Task Unit (NSWTU).** These provisional subordinate units of a Naval Special Warfare Task Group (NSWTG) provide command and control, coordinate administrative and logistical support, and integrate special operations with maritime operations. Designated Naval Special Warfare (NSW) forces may be under the operational control of the naval component commander or a JFSOCC. NSW forces are often assigned to conventional naval component commanders, as well as to theater JFSOCCs. Several NSWTUs could be operationally subordinate to a NSWTG, as well as having an NSWTU under the OPCON of a JFSOCC.

# Chapter 3. U.S. Army Special Operations Forces

## United States Army Special Operations Command (USASOC)

On December 1, 1989, the Department of the Army established the U.S. Army Special Operations Command (USASOC) at Fort Bragg, North Carolina, as an Army Service Component Command (ASCC) to enhance the readiness of Army SOF (ARSOF). Army support to U.S. Special Operations Command (USSOCOM) located at MacDill AFB, Florida, was also enhanced as a result of the new command and control structure. As an ASCC, USASOC provides Special



Forces (SF), Ranger, Special Operations Aviation, Psychological Operations, and Civil Affairs forces to USSOCOM for deployment to combatant unified commands around the world. As an ASCC, USASOC reports directly to the Department of the Army for service guidance. USASOC commands active Army SOF. It also provides oversight of Army National Guard SOF readiness, organization, training, and employment in coordination with the National Guard Bureau and State Adjutants General.

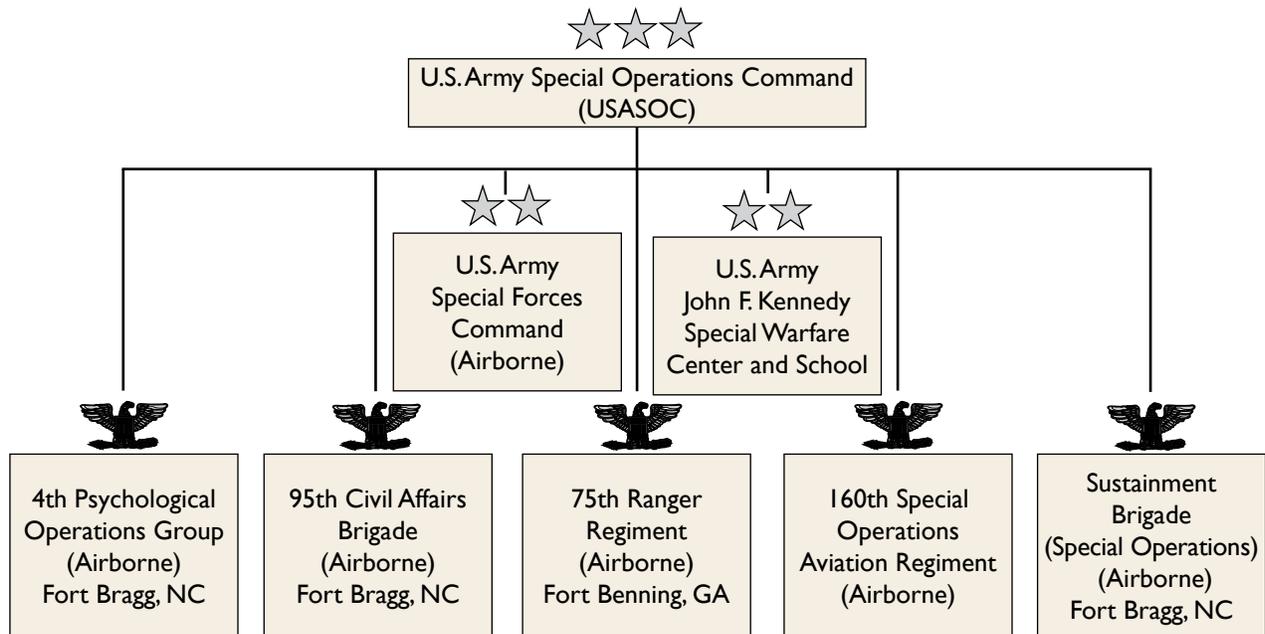
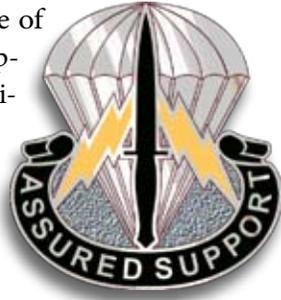


Figure 3-I. USASOC Organization Chart

## Sustainment Brigade (Special Operations) (Airborne) – SB(SO)(A)

The SB(SO)(A), is a Table of Organization and Equipment (TOE)-deployable organization assigned to USASOC. The Brigade provides Army SOF with:



- a. Expeditionary communications support
- b. Limited, short-term, and expeditionary role II (care provided at a division or corps clearing station) medical support
- c. Logistics plans, synchronization, and coordination support.

The SB(SO)(A) is unique among Sustainment Brigades in that the SB(SO)(A):

- a. Maintains global situational awareness of deployed ARSOF logistics support structures
- b. Is multi-composition in structure
- c. Is focused at the operational level for logistics planning and synchronization
- d. Deploys as small, modular teams
- e. Trains, resources and equips the Army's only Special Operations Signal Battalion (112th Signal Battalion)
- f. Contains three expeditionary medical-role-II teams to enable ARSOF units to operate with conventional Forward Surgical Teams or other resuscitative surgical teams.

### Mission

**Core Mission.** The SB(SO)(A) sets the operational-level logistics conditions in order to enable ARSOF operations.

### Mission Essential Tasks

- a. Coordinate ARSOF logistics requirements, plans, Army-common logistics, and sustainment in six Geographical Combatant Command AORs to support deployed ARSOF and joint/combined SOF where the Army is the Executive Agent. ARSOF liaison elements (ALEs) accomplish this by working with both

the TSOC and ASCC to ensure ARSOF logistics requirements generated by TSOC plans, exercises and operations are integrated into the ASCC concept of support for the theater.

- b. Deploy operational level logistics synchronization capabilities in support of ARSOF-led JSOTFs and SOTFs. The SB(SO)(A) deploys ASPO cells to co-locate with TSC/ESCs to ensure deployed ARSOF to synchronize ASCC provided logistics support and SOF-peculiar logistics support to ARSOF units.
- c. Provide expeditionary, limited and short-term medical-role-II capabilities to deployed ARSOF. Role II medical teams assigned to the brigade HHC allow deployed ARSOF to integrate resuscitative surgical teams in support of ARSOF operations.
- d. Train, resource, and equip the 112th Signal Battalion.
- e. Deploy a tailored brigade headquarters to C2 operational-level logistics in support of ARSOF operations until relieved by ASCC logistics C2 capabilities. The SB(SO)(A) is capable of providing C2 of Army CSSBs operating in support of ARSOF for up to 6 months.

### Concept of Employment

The SB(SO)(A) ALEs are permanently employed in their specific region by being stationed with or in close proximity to each TSOC.

During ARSOF initial-entry operations into a theater, the ALE locates where it can best ensure plans and requirements developed at the TSOC are incorporated into the ASCC's logistical planning. During initial-entry operations, the SB(SO)(A) Operations Division reinforces ALE planning efforts from its Home Station Operations Center (HSOC) at Fort Bragg. The Operations Division may also reinforce ALE efforts in the region by locating Operations Division personnel forward with the ALE when required.

As the theater matures and conventional theater support units arrive, the SB(SO)(A) may deploy

ARSOF Support Operations Cells (ASPOs) into the joint operational area in support of an ARSOF-based JSOTF or a SOF-based JTF. ASPOs may collocate with the Theater Support Command (TSC)/Expeditionary Sustainment Command (ESC), CJOSTF Headquarters, Group Support Battalion (GSB), or RSOD where they will synchronize ASCC provided logistics support to ARSOF units.

During theater expansion, the SB(SO)(A) may be directed to deploy a tailored brigade headquarters to

C2 operational-level logistics in support of ARSOF operations, until relieved by ASCC logistics C2 capabilities.

Not resourced to operate as a stand-alone headquarters due to the lack of base-operations enablers, the SB(SO)(A) requires augmentation or activation of its reserve-component companies to perform this mission. The organization can conduct 24-hour operations as a logistics integrator for SOF sustainment requirements.

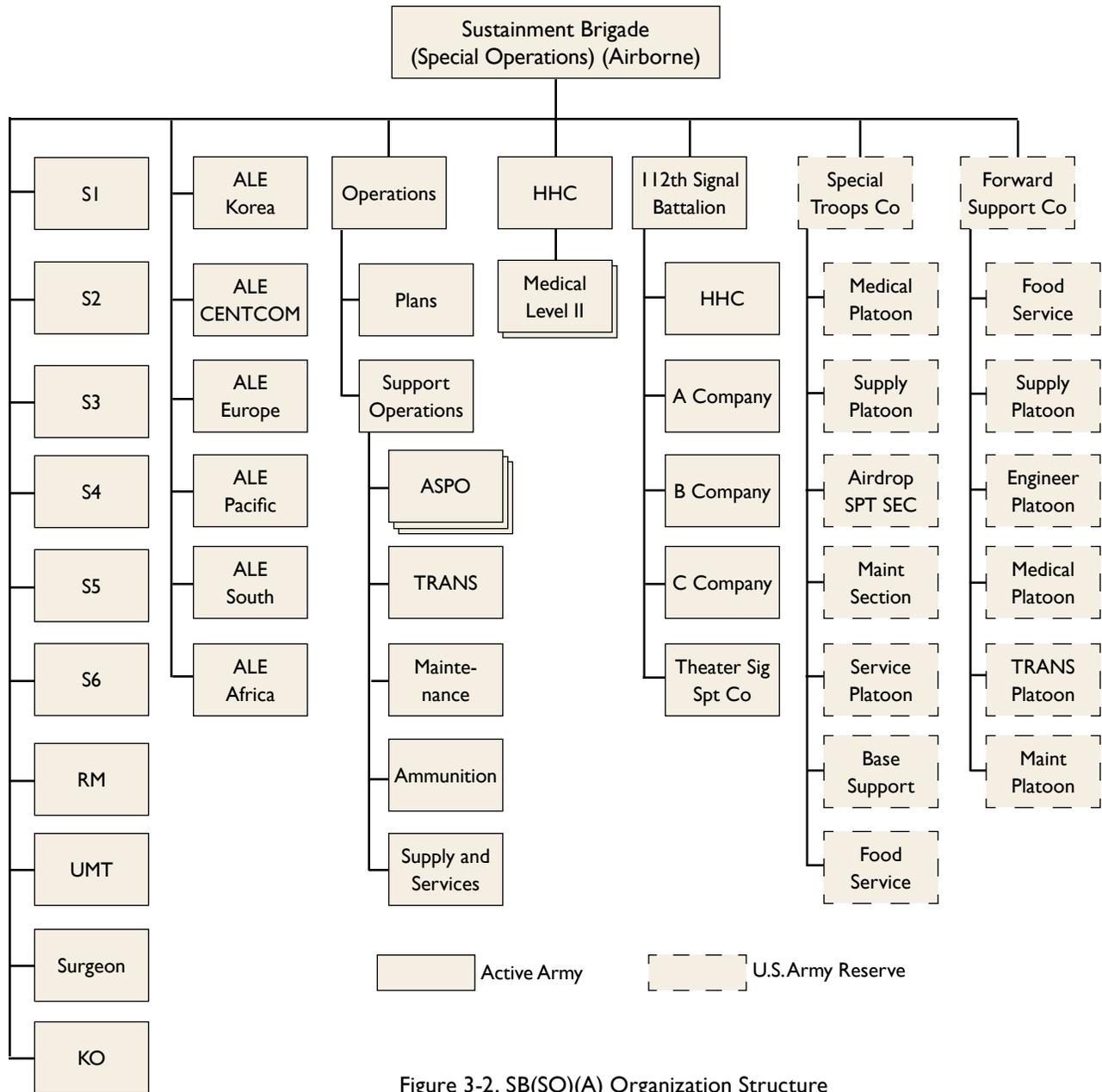


Figure 3-2. SB(SO)(A) Organization Structure

The SB(SO)(A) will deploy with organic personnel and equipment, but may also imbed logistic planners within supported unit staff cells or theater support staffs. Initially, the SB(SO)(A) may be OPCON to the TSC to establish the unity of command required to achieve the JFC's campaign objectives.

If conventional forces are required in-theater, the TSC deploys its ESC into the theater of operations to establish C2 of logistic operations, theater opening functions, and relieves the SB(SO)(A) (if deployed). The TSC establishes command and control of logistic operations in the theater and functions as the single operator for theater distribution; synchronizing the flow of forces and logistics in accordance with the JFC's campaign plan and intent. When an ESC is deployed, the SB(SO)(A) will deploy an ASPO to collocate with the ESC to synchronize ASCC provided logistics support to ARSOF units.

### Capabilities

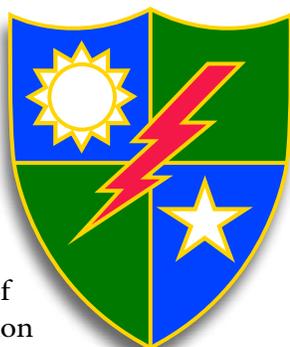
The SB(SO)(A) provides command and control to HHC, SB(SO)(A); the Special Troop Company (A) (ARNG); a Forward Support Company (A) (ARNG); and the 112th Signal Battalion (SO)(A). The SB(SO)(A):

- a. Provides expeditionary communications support; limited, short-term and expeditionary role II medical support; and logistics plans, synchronization and coordination support to ARSOF.
- b. Deploys rapidly and task-organizes as required to provide C2 of logistics, Army Health Support (AHS), and communications support to ARSOF.
- c. Provides ALE support to TSOCs in order to conduct detailed logistics planning in support of ARSOF operations. ALE Planning capabilities include maintaining a theater Army logistics estimate, identifying SOF logistics requirements, coordinating for resources to enable operational requirements, assist the TSOC in the development of an concept of support and coordinating, through the SB(SO)(A) HSOC, for SOF-Peculiar and Title 10 support for ARSOF units.
- d. Will be prepared to provide C2 for two CSSBs in support of a JTF or JSOTF for up to six months.
- e. The SB(SO)(A) HQ ensures deployed ARSOF CSS requirements are met by the ASCC, theater, HN, joint, and third-country logistics infrastructures.
- f. IAW proper mobilization standards, mobilizes ARNG Soldiers and equipment from the Special Troop Company (Airborne) (STC-A) and FSC to execute the SB(SO)(A) mission. When employed in support of the SB(SO)(A), the ARNG Soldiers provide the base operating support capabilities for the SB(SO)(A), such as engineering, base operations, food service and field feeding, communications, maintenance, UMT, staff augmentation for personnel, communications, and LAMO. The ARNG FSC is designed to execute tactical-level logistics operations as directed by the SB(SO)(A).

## 75th Ranger Regiment

When the 1st and 2nd Ranger Battalions were reactivated in 1974, General Abrams chartered them to be “the best light infantry unit in the world” and a “standard bearer for the rest of the Army.” After Operation URGENT FURY (Grenada, 1983),

the requirement for more Rangers and a better-suited command structure resulted in the formation of the 3d Ranger Battalion and the Regimental Headquarters in 1984. In 2006 a fourth Ranger Battalion, the Regimental Special Troops Battalion was added to the Regiment. The Ranger Regiment has been a continuous participant in the Global War on Terrorism since October 2001.



A typical Ranger Battalion or Regiment mission may involve seizing an airfield for use by follow-on conventional forces and conducting raids on key targets of operational or strategic importance. Once secured, follow-on airland or airborne forces are introduced into theater and relieve the Ranger force so that it may conduct planning for future SOF operations.

Rangers rely heavily on external fire support. Ranger fire support personnel train extensively on the employment of CAS, attack helicopters, AC-130 Gunship, and artillery. The close-working relationships with units that habitually support the force ensure the Ranger force always has the required assets to perform its mission.

### *75th Ranger Regiment Task*

The 75th Ranger Regiment plans and conducts joint special military operations in support of U.S. policy and objectives. These joint special military operations consist of deep penetration, direct-action missions to capture or destroy critical enemy nodes and facilities, or recover designated personnel or equipment. These missions include conducting raids and seizing lodgments under hostile or uncertain environments.

The cornerstone of Ranger missions is the direct action raid. More specifically, Rangers are the premier raid and airfield seizure unit in the Army. In order to remain proficient in all light infantry skills, Ranger units also focus on mission-essential tasks that include movement to contact, ambush, reconnaissance, airborne and air assaults, and hasty defense.



Army Rangers conducting parachute drop.

## 75th Ranger Regiment Organization

The 75th Ranger Regiment, headquartered at Fort Benning, Georgia, is composed of four Ranger Battalions and is the premier light-infantry unit of the United States Army. The four Ranger Battalions that comprise the 75th Ranger Regiment are geographically dispersed. Their locations are:

- 1st Battalion, 75th Ranger Regiment, Hunter Army Airfield, Georgia
- 2nd Battalion, 75th Ranger Regiment, Fort Lewis, Washington
- 3rd Battalion, 75th Ranger Regiment, Fort Benning, Georgia
- Special Troops Battalion, 75th Ranger Regiment, Fort Benning, Georgia

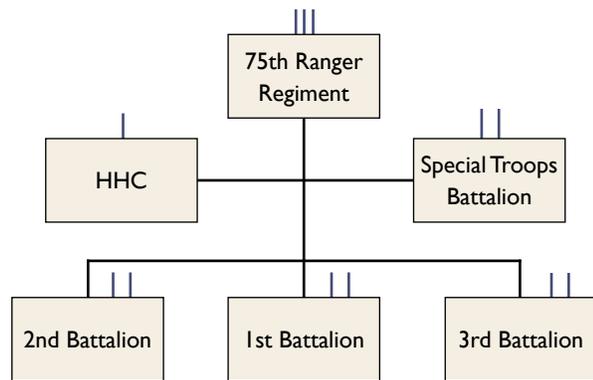


Figure 3-3. 75th Ranger Regiment Organization

### Regimental Headquarters

The headquarters consists of the command group, normal staff positions S-1 through S-6 and S-8, a fire support element, special staff, a medical section, and a company headquarters. Additionally, the Regiment has the capability of deploying a planning team consisting of experienced Ranger operations, intelligence, fire support, communications, and logistics planners. The planning team can deploy on short notice, with USASOC approval, to Theater Special Operations Commands to plan Ranger operations during crisis action planning for contingency operations.

## Ranger Special Troops Battalion (RSTB)

The RSTB consists of a reconnaissance company, a communications company, an intelligence company, and an operations company. Assets within the Special Troops Battalion can deploy in support of individual Ranger battalions or as a whole to support Regimental operations.

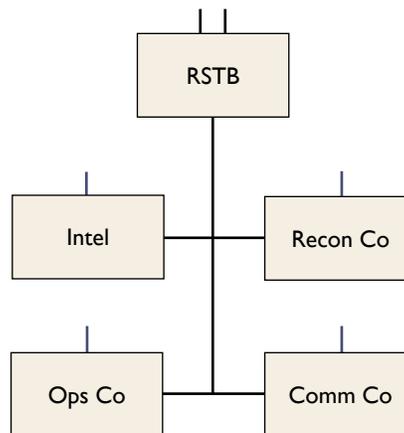


Figure 3-4. Regimental Special Troops Battalion Organization

### Ranger Rifle Battalions

There are three identical Ranger Rifle Battalions subordinate to the 75th Ranger Regiment. Each Rifle Battalion is composed of a headquarters and headquarters company (HHC), four rifle companies, and a support company.

**Battalion HHC.** The battalion HHC also has a sniper platoon, mortar platoon, reconnaissance platoon, medical section, communications section, K9 (dog) section, and a tactical surveillance equipment section.

The sniper platoon is organized into a headquarters section and two sections of six 2-man sniper teams each. These snipers are highly proficient marksman trained to employ the M24 sniper weapon system, Barret .50 cal rifle, and the SR25 sniper rifle, all of which are night capable.

The battalion mortar platoon is organized into a headquarters section, a fire direction control section,

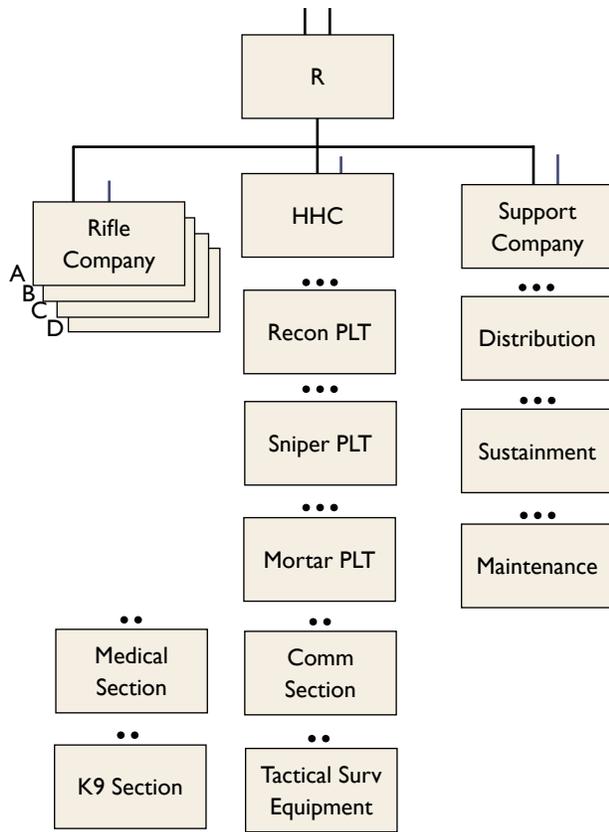


Figure 3-5. Ranger Rifle Battalion Organization

and two sections of two mortar squads each. The platoon has the 60-mm, 81-mm, and 120-mm mortar systems. Mortars are issued and employed based upon METT-TC. The mortar platoon has the capability to operate split section or at platoon level.

**Support Company.** Each Ranger battalion has a Ranger Support Company (E Co) that provides distribution, maintenance, and sustainment capabilities for all classes of supply. This element provides the battalion the ability to operate independently for prolonged periods of time and integrate with supporting command logistic units. This support element is also capable of independently out-loading the battalion and conducting reception, staging, onward-movement, and integration (RSOI) upon arrival at a designated location.

**Ranger Rifle Companies.** There are four rifle companies in each Ranger battalion and the companies are identically organized.

- a. The company antitank (AT) section is organized into three two-man antitank teams. Their primary weapons are the 84-mm Carl Gustav Ranger Anti-Armor Weapons System (RAAWS) and the Javelin.
- b. The fire support element (FSE) consists of an artillery forward observer (MOS 13F) and a radiotelephone operator per platoon.
- c. The company headquarters has an artillery fire support officer, fire support non-commissioned officer and fire support specialist.
- d. The medical section consists of one medical NCO (MOS 68W) per company and two medics per platoon.
- e. Each rifle platoon has three seven-man squads and a machine gun squad with three 2-man machine gun teams.

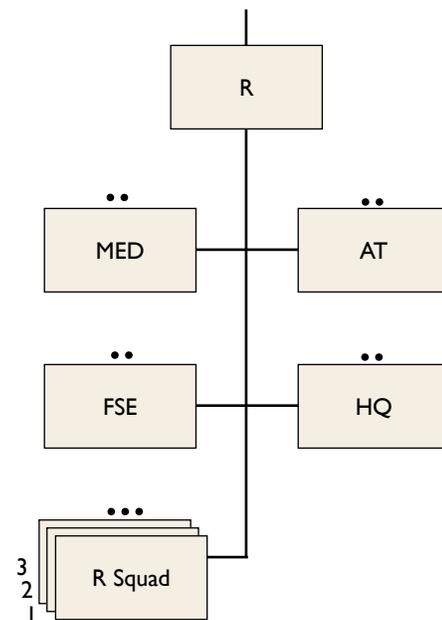


Figure 3-6. Ranger Rifle Company Organization

### Equipment

Each Ranger Rifle Company has eight ground mobility vehicles—desert-equipped High Mobility Multipurpose Wheeled Vehicles (HMMWV or Humvee). The Support Companies have a fleet

of 5-ton vehicles, two fuelers, recovery vehicles, and maintenance vehicles. Normally, each vehicle mounts an M240G MG and either a MK-4 Grenade Launcher or a M2, .50-cal MG. One of the passengers mans an antiarmor weapon (RAAWS, AT-4, LAW, and Javelin). The RSOV's main purpose is to provide a mobile, lethal, defensive capability. They are not assault vehicles, but are useful in establishing battle positions that provide the force some standoff capability for a short duration. Each battalion also possesses ten all terrain vehicles (ATVs) and eight 80cc minibikes that assist in providing security and mobility during airfield seizures. Most commonly used as runway clearing assets, listening posts/observation posts, or as an economy of force screen for early warning, the ATVs and minibikes offer the commander tactical mobility.

### *Command and Control*

The flexibility of the Ranger force requires it to perform under various command structures. The force can work unilaterally under a Corps, as a part of a JSOTF, as a SOTF, or as an Army component in a JTF. Historically, it is common for the Ranger force to conduct forced entry operations as part of a JSOTF, and then become OPCON to a JTF to afford them the capability to conduct special operations/direct action missions.

### *Capabilities*

Ranger DA operations are short duration strikes or other small scale operations to seize, destroy, or capture enemy forces or facilities, or to recover designated personnel (noncombatant evacuation operations, liberate friendly prisoners of war, capture designated enemy personnel) or equipment in hostile, denied or politically sensitive areas. These operations are conducted independently or in support of a campaign plan and often have strategic implications. They may be conducted in coordination with conventional forces, but differ from conventional operations in degree of risk, operational techniques, and modes of employment. They rely

on undetected insertion and rapid movement to the target if the force is inserted offset from the objective and surprise and shock if the insertion is on the target. Rangers normally operate under conditions of air superiority.

The strategic responsiveness of the Ranger force provides the President and/or SecDef a credible combat capability for protecting selected vital U.S. interests without having to wait for international support or guarantees of non-intervention. The Ranger force is frequently the principle element of ground combat power when the U.S. conducts a forcible entry operation.

During short duration operations, Ranger units require minimal support, and are not designed for sustained independent operations beyond approximately five days of continuous combat.

For longer duration combat operations Ranger units have their own organic support companies capable of integrating with theater support assets to provide logistic support across all classes of supply. During all phases of operations and training, Ranger units require responsive and adequate support, either from theater Army or SOF assets.

### *Limitations*

Ranger units have a limited anti-armor capability (84mm Carl Gustav and Javelin) and organic indirect fire support assets that include 60-mm, 81-mm, and 120-mm mortars. The only air defense artillery (ADA) system is the Stinger. Ranger units have limited organic ground mobility assets.

### *Deployment*

The 75th Ranger Regiment maintains a high level of unit readiness. The Regiment can deploy one Ranger battalion and a Regimental C2 element within 18 hours of alert notification. It can follow with two additional battalions within 72 hours. The Regimental Headquarters maintains command and control and liaison elements, along with communications, reconnaissance, and intelligence teams from the Special Troops Battalion immediately available for

deployment. Higher levels of readiness status can be achieved in response to specific world situations.

Deployment options include:

- a. Deploying directly from home station to the target area
- b. Deploying from home station to a continental United States (CONUS) or outside the continental United States (OCONUS) intermediate staging base (ISB) with logistical unit support, then deploying to the target area or to a forward staging base (FSB) from the ISB
- c. Deploying from home station to a seaport of embarkation (SPOE) to board a naval vessel, such as an aircraft carrier or other suitable vessel, which serves as an afloat forward staging base. The vessel transports the Ranger force, along with special operations helicopters, and conducts air assault operations into the target area. Additionally, a Ranger force can linkup with an afloat forward staging base (AFSB) underway via helicopter from a land-based ISB or FSB.

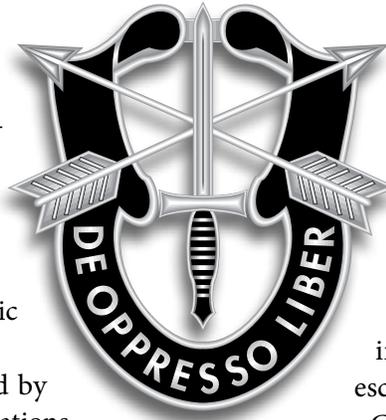
## U.S. Army Special Forces Command (Airborne) – (USASFC(A))

On 27 November 1990, the U.S. Army 1st Special Operations Command was redesignated the U.S. Army Special Forces Command (Airborne). The USASFC(A) mission is to train, educate, validate, and prepare Special Forces units to deploy and execute operational requirements for the geographic combatant commanders.

SF operations are characterized by their strategic and operational implications. Unique SF skills in language qualification, regional orientation, cultural awareness, and interpersonal relations are keys to the successes experienced by SF units in the field. SF operations require flexible and versatile forces that can function effectively in diverse and contradictory environments. Examples of these operations include counterdrug operations in Latin America, operations in support of Operation ENDURING FREEDOM in Afghanistan and Operation IRAQI FREEDOM, joint commission observers in Bosnia, humanitarian mine action initiatives, joint combined exchange training (JCET) initiatives worldwide, and training foreign military forces in peacetime operations. Blending their skills and experience enables SF Soldiers to navigate in ambiguous environments that affect the political, social, religious, and humanitarian aspects of today's uncertain environment.

### USASFC(A) Tasks

Special Forces Soldiers are carefully selected, specially trained, and capable of extended operations in extremely remote and hostile territory. They train to perform five doctrinal missions: UW, Foreign Internal Defense (FID), Special Reconnaissance (SR), Direct Action (DA), and Counterterrorism (CT). While Special Forces Soldiers are capable of performing all of these missions, an increasing emphasis is being placed on UW and coalition warfare and support. Unconventional Warfare encompasses a broad spectrum of military and paramilitary operations, normally of long duration, predominantly



conducted by indigenous or surrogate forces that are organized, trained, equipped, supported, and directed in varying degrees by an external source. It includes guerrilla warfare and other offensive low-visibility, covert, or clandestine operations, as well as the indirect activities of subversion, sabotage, intelligence activities, and evasion and escape (E&E).

Coalition warfare and support draws upon the Special Forces Soldier maturity, military skills, language skills, and cultural awareness. It ensures the ability of a wide variety of foreign troops to work together effectively in a wide variety of military exercises or operations such as Operation DESERT STORM.

### USASFC(A) Organization

Special Forces Command exercises command and control over five active component groups. Additionally, it exercises training oversight of two Army National Guard groups. Each Special Forces Group is regionally oriented to support one of the geographic combatant commanders. SF is U.S. Army forces organized, trained, and equipped to conduct SO, with an emphasis on UW capabilities. SF composes a unique, unconventional, combat arms organization. They are highly trained and experienced professionals with an extraordinary degree of versatility. They can plan and conduct SO across the full range of military operations. Their tactical actions may often have strategic or operational effects. The USASFC(A) composes the largest combat force under USASOC.

SFG(A) Locations and AORs:

- a. 1st SFG(A) PACOM
  - 2 Battalions, Fort Lewis Washington
  - 1 Battalion, Okinawa, Japan
- b. 3rd SFG(A) EUCOM/AFRICOM
  - 3 Battalions, Fort Bragg, North Carolina
- c. 5th SFG(A) CENTCOM
  - 3 Battalions Fort Campbell, Kentucky

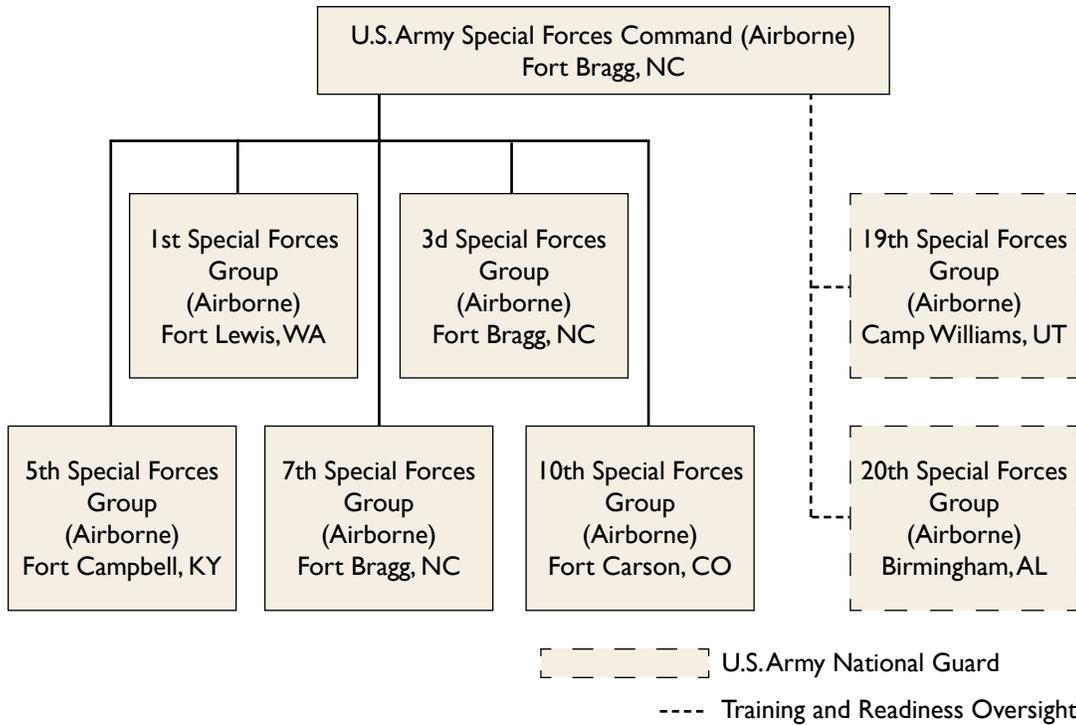


Figure 3-7. United States Army Special Forces Command Organization

- d. 7th SFG(A) SOUTHCOM
  - 3 Battalions Fort Bragg, North Carolina
- e. 10th SFG(A) EUCOM
  - 2 Battalions Fort Carson, Colorado
  - 1 Battalion Stuttgart, Germany
- f. 19th SFG(A) PACOM/CENTCOM
  - Draper, Utah
- g. 20th SFG(A) SOUTHCOM
  - Birmingham, Alabama

**Special Forces Group (Airborne)**

**Special Forces Group (Airborne) Task**

To plan and support special operations in any operational environment in peace, conflict, and war as directed by the President and/or Secretary of Defense.

**Special Forces Group (Airborne) Organization**

The SFG(A) is composed of one Headquarters and Headquarters Company, one Group Support Battalion, and four Special Forces Battalions. The SFG(A) is the largest combat element of Army SOF, and all assigned personnel are Airborne qualified.

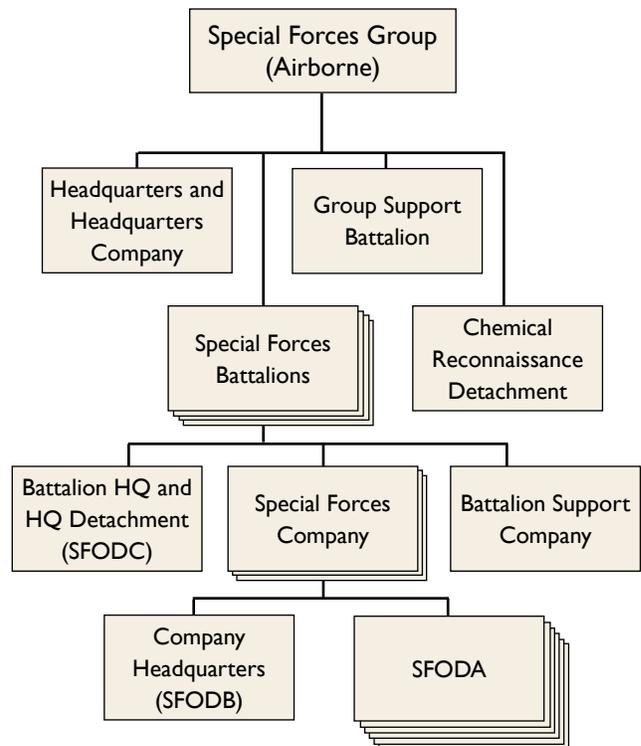


Figure 3-8. Special Forces Group (Airborne) Organization

The SFG(A) is an extremely flexible organization designed to have self-contained C2 and support elements for long-duration missions. Because of this, the SFG(A) has the capability to form the nucleus of the SOTF or a JSOTF. If augmented, the SFG(A) may exercise OPCON of conventional force units.

### *Special Forces Group (Airborne) Capabilities*

SFG(A) capabilities are:

- a. C2 of Special Forces Battalions and support elements
- b. Function as an SOTF or JSOTF when augmented by resources from other services
- c. Establish, operate, and support 4 SOTFs
- d. Train and prepare operational elements for deployment
- e. Infiltrate and exfiltrate specified operational areas by air, land, and sea.

### *Special Forces Group Support Battalion*

The multifunctional Group Support Battalion (GSB) provides logistical support to SFGs and attached units, and it ties together the entire sustainment spectrum of supplies, maintenance, and services. The GSB commander is the group commander's senior battle logistician and serves as the single logistics operator for support to the SFG (A). This concept allows the SFG commander and his staff to focus on the war, while the GSB commander executes the SFG commander's concept of logistical support. Much like the SF warrior, the GSB logistician is a dedicated professional logistician whose primary focus is "sustaining the SOF warrior."

#### *Group Support Battalion Task*

The SF GSB plans, coordinates, and executes logistical sustainment operations for the SFGs, and when directed, will support forces attached or assigned to a predominantly SF JSOTF. The GSB controls consolidated logistical facilities and activities when the SOTFs and Army FOBs consolidate sustainment operations. It also augments the resources of the battalion support companies when subordinate battalions establish SOTFs.

The GSB provides common-user and SOF-peculiar logistical direct support for field feeding, fuel, bare-base operations, ammunition, force health protection (FHP), maintenance, limited transportation, aerial delivery, water production, common supplies, chemical decontamination, communication, intelligence, and operations support to the SFG.

The GSB has significantly less force structure and capabilities than a brigade support battalion (BSB). The GSB plans and coordinates logistical operations with the TSOC, SB(SO)(A), SC(T), and the ASCC. Logistics replenishment operations conducted by the SC(T) are critical for sustainment of SOF that are often deployed into isolated, austere, and non-permissive locations. Failure to provide support to SOF places the JFC's concept of operations at risk of failure. During the early phase of JSOTF operations, before SC(T) forces deploy, the GSB provides C2 of all logistic operations and forces within the AO.

The GSB is joint and multinational capable in that it can accept augmentation of, and employ, common user logistical assets from other Services and nations and integrate their capabilities into a cohesive plan supporting the JSOTF commander's operational concept. The GSB is capable, with replenishment, of supporting all of the SFGs' logistical requirements. With augmentation from the SC(T) or other Services and nations, the GSB can integrate their capabilities for common user logistics (CUL) support for component forces of the C/JSOTF. When component forces are assigned to a JSOTF, they will provide their organic support packages for Service-specific requirements and common user logistics support.

The GSB and SF battalion support companies may require Army logistics augmentation to provide support during sustained operations, or for a capability not organic to the SFG. This augmentation may be necessary when:

- a. The SOTF and Army forward operating bases (FOBs) are set up in undeveloped theaters without established Army theater opening, theater distribution, or area support.
- b. The SOTF bases and Army FOBs are not established at fixed facilities.
- c. A high percentage of SF operational detachments are committed simultaneously.

The SFG has the most robust FHP structure of any ARSOF unit. It usually has several physicians and physician assistants assigned at the group and battalion level. Each Special Forces Operational Detachment "A" is authorized 2 SF medical sergeants. However, similar to other light units, staffing depends on theater or SB(SO)(A) FHP assets.

### Group Support Battalion Organization

The GSB consists of a Group Service Support Company (GSSC) and a Group Support Company (GSC). The GSSC is a multi-functional logistics organization consisting of a HQ, sustainment platoon, distribution platoon, field maintenance platoon, and medical platoon. The GSC has organic signal, military intelligence, and chemical decontamination detachments. The GSSC functions as the HQ company for the GSB and depends on the HHC, SFG, for administrative and ministry support.

### Limitations of the Group Support Battalion

The GSB is not designed to provide all or part of the logistics functions listed in the following paragraph. To obtain these services for a prolonged deployment the GSB must tie into the Army Service Sustainment Command (ASSC).

A requirement exists to plan for and receive augmentation based on METT-TC to accomplish the assigned mission. Assessing the mission and task organization of the GSB is critical in every mission analysis. Factors and limitations to be considered are as follows:

- a. Urban areas, dense jungles and forests, steep and rugged terrain, and large water obstacles limit movement
- b. The GSB has no organic mortuary affairs (MA) capability for collection, processing, and evacuation without augmentation
- c. Laundry and bath is not organic to the SFG; support is provided by the SB(SO)(A) or SC(T)

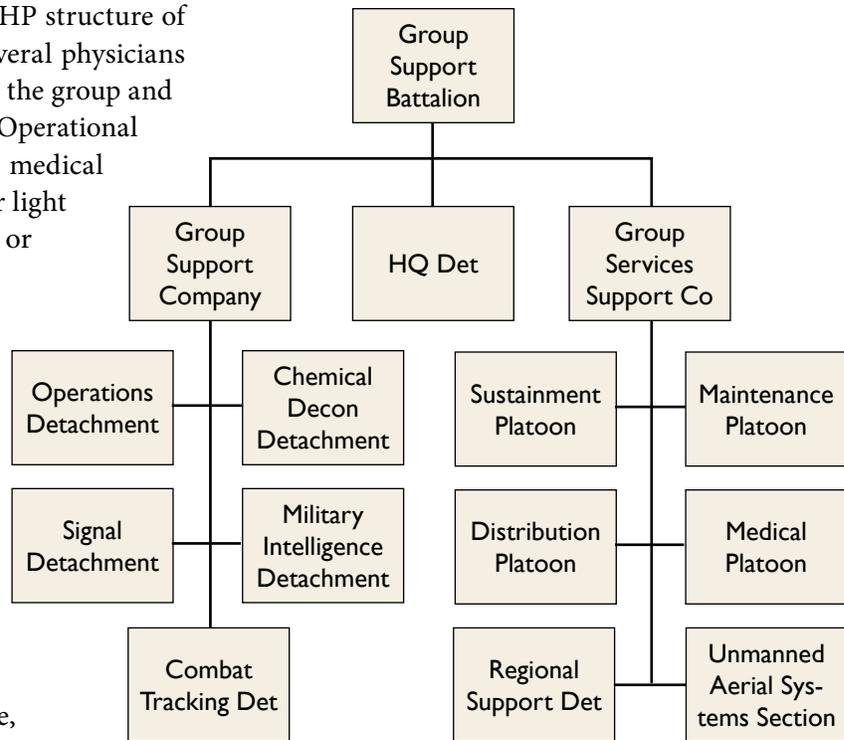


Figure 3-9. Group Support Battalion Organization

- d. Limited financial management
- e. Limited Class IX and VIII storage
- f. Limited capability to reconfigure load. Ammunition from EAB must be in strategic or operational configured loads
- g. No firefighting capability
- h. Explosive ordnance disposal is not organic to the SFG, and requires augmentation from the ASSC
- i. Human resources other than its own unit S-1 HR operations; It relies on the ASSC to provide additional critical wartime personnel support
- j. Legal support is limited to the assigned SFG; augmentation to support all Judge Advocate General (JAG) functions is required
- k. Limited maintenance backup support to the battalion units
- l. No organic band support
- m. No optical fabrication and blood product management support
- n. No organic aeromedical evacuation support.

## Special Forces Battalion (Airborne)

The Special Forces Battalion (Airborne) comprises one Battalion Headquarters Detachment (BN HQ DET/C DET), one Support Company, and three Special Forces Companies. There is one SFOD Combat Diving A Detachment (CBT DIV A DET) and one SFOD Military Free Fall A (SFODA) Detachment per battalion.

### Special Forces Battalion (Airborne) Personnel

The BN HQ DET is authorized 12 officers, 1 warrant officer, and 25 enlisted Soldiers. The SPT CO is authorized 4 officers and 75 enlisted Soldiers. Each SF CO is authorized 8 officers, 7 warrant officers, and 67 enlisted Soldiers.

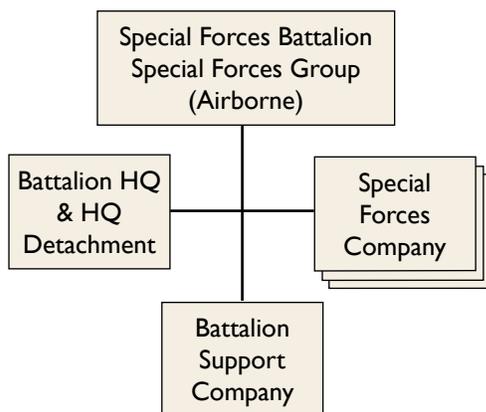


Figure 3-10. SFG(A) Battalion Organization

### Special Forces Battalion (Airborne) Task

To plan, conduct, and support special operations activities in uncertain, hostile, or permissive operational environments. The battalion HQ detachment (SFODC) commands and controls the activities of the SF battalion, and when deployed, is directly responsible for isolating, launching, controlling, sustaining, recovering, and reconstituting SFODAs.

### Special Forces Battalion (Airborne) Capabilities

The battalion's C2 and support elements can function as the headquarters for an SOTF when augmented by resources from the SFG(A). The C2 and support elements can:

- Provide Special Operations Command and Control Element (SOCCEs), to supported conventional headquarters, and operational elements as directed
- Establish, operate, and support a SOTF and up to three AOB's
- Train and prepare SF teams for deployment
- Direct, support, and sustain deployed SF teams.

### Battalion Support Company

The SF battalion commander provides C2 for the BSC. The BSC is assigned and organic to the SF battalion. The BSC provides routine administrative and logistics support to the SF battalion HQ detachment, the company's organic or attached elements, and the SOTF SPTCENs and SIGCENs. The support company commander oversees all personnel and elements assigned or attached to the company.

### Special Forces Company

The SF Company plans and conducts SO activities in permissive, uncertain or hostile environments. The company HQ (SFODB) is an eleven man team. In garrison, the SFODB commands and controls its own organic SFODAs. The SF company commander is an experienced SF major. When deployed, the

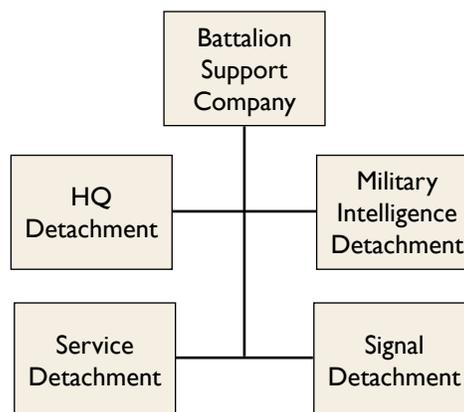


Figure 3-11. SFG(A) Battalion Support Company Organization

SFODB functions as a separate operational detachment conducting its assigned mission. The mission may require the SFODB to operate separately or to exercise operational control (OPCON) of a mix of organic and attached SFODAs.

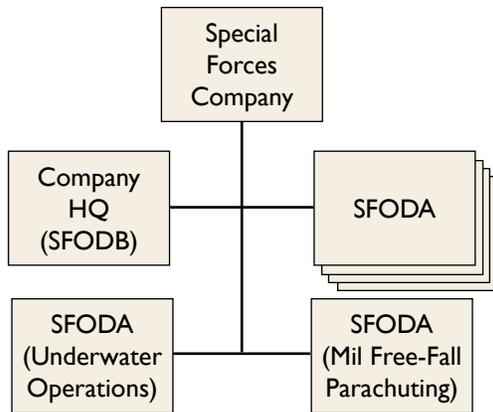


Figure 3-12. Special Forces Company Organization

### Special Forces Operational Detachment "A"

The basic building block of SF operations is the 12-man SFODA, also known as an A detachment or A team. All other SF organizations command, control, and support the SFODA.

#### Tasks

The ODAs primary task is to conduct UW as directed. They also have the capability to perform FID, CT, Nonproliferation of WMD, DA, SR, and support of IO operations as directed.

#### Organization

The ODA consists of two officers, an Army Captain and a Warrant Officer. The senior enlisted member is a Master Sergeant. There are 9 other enlisted team members. When required the ODA can operate under the split team concept making up two 6-man teams.

### Methods of Infiltration

Special Forces Soldiers possess the unique capabilities in infiltrate their target area by land, air, and sea.

**Land Infiltration/Exfiltration.** Fifty-four ODAs and six Support Operations Team Alpha (SOT-A) per SFG can infiltrate/exfiltrate an operational area by foot. Foot movement limiting factors include terrain, water availability, enemy presence and Soldier load. Fifty-four ODAs assigned to the 5th SFG and 18 ODAs assigned to the 3rd SFG are trained and equipped to infiltrate/exfiltrate by Ground Mobility Vehicles (GMVs). Selected ODAs assigned to the 10th SFG, 1st SFG, and 7th SFG can infiltrate using High Altitude/Technical Mountain techniques. Also, selected ODAs from the 10th SFG and the 1st SFG can infiltrate using ski techniques and Mobile Over Snow Transports (MOST).

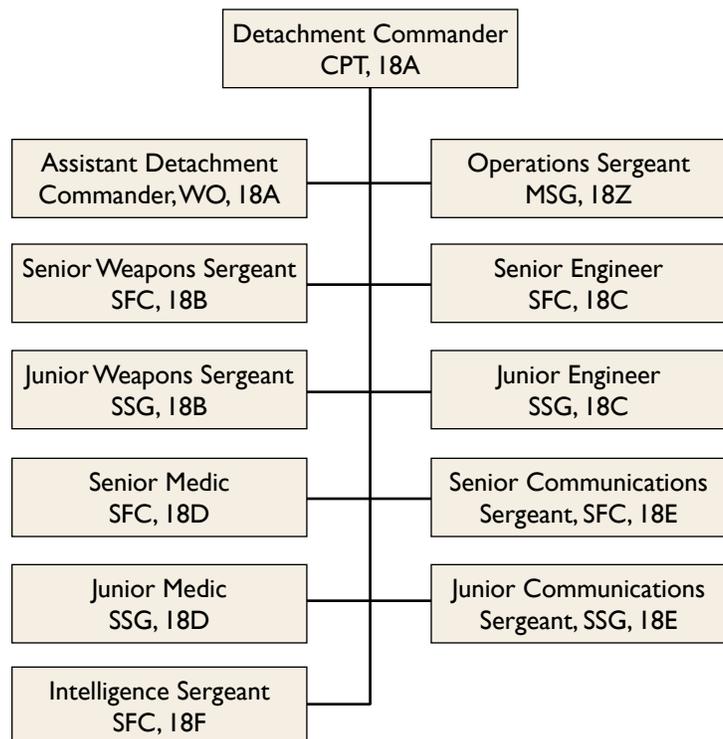


Figure 3-13. Special Forces Detach (SFODA) Organization

**Air Infiltration (Static line Parachute).** Special Forces Groups, Special Forces Battalions, Operational Detachments Charlie (ODC), Special Forces Companies, Operational Detachments Bravo (ODB), and Operational Detachments Alpha (ODA) are static line parachute qualified.

**Air Infiltration (Military Free Fall).** Nine ODAs per SFG (A) can infiltrate by employing Military Free Fall High Altitude Low Opening (HALO) or High Altitude High Opening (HAHO) techniques.

**Air Infiltration (Fixed and Rotary Wing Aircraft).** ODC, ODB, and ODA personnel and equipment can infiltrate via fixed and rotary wing aircraft. Specific infiltration techniques include airland, rappel, and fast rope. Capabilities are only limited by aircraft capabilities and landing site availability.

**Water Infiltration/Exfiltration.** All water infiltration techniques may be initiated from surface or sub-surface mother craft, dropped by parachute from fixed or rotor wing aircraft. Three ODAs per SFG can infiltrate or exfiltrate using closed circuiting breathing equipment or self contained underwater breathing apparatus (SCUBA) open circuit equipment.



SF Soldier in Afghanistan

Nine ODAs per SFG are trained to infiltrate/exfiltrate by combat rubber raiding craft (CRRC). Twelve ODAs per SFG can infiltrate and exfiltrate by surface swim techniques. Unless specifically identified on the MTO&E, the only teams with designated specialty skills are HALO and SCUBA teams. Other special skills, such as combat swim, are based upon the unit's mission essential task list (METL).

# 160th Special Operations Aviation Regiment (SOAR)

The Army owes its modern night-fighting aviation capabilities to the 160th Special Operations Aviation Regiment (Airborne) which pioneered night flight techniques, shared in the development of equipment, and proved that *Night Stalkers Don't Quit*—the motto the Regiment lives by. The unit began in the summer of 1980 as Task Force 158 with elements of the 158th Aviation Battalion, 101st Aviation Battalion, 229th Aviation Battalion and the 159th Aviation Battalion. Aviators and support personnel immediately entered into a period of intensive night flying and quickly became the Army's premier night fighting aviation force. The 160th Aviation Battalion was activated as a unit of the 101st Airborne Division (Air Assault) on 16 October 1981 and, with the same attachments that formed its predecessor unit, became Task Force 160. Since its formation, the 160th has become known as the Night Stalkers because of their capability to strike undetected during darkness. Over the years the unit has grown to regimental size and has greatly increased its mission capabilities. It routinely provides precision rotary wing aviation support to joint SOF forces around the world.



## SOAR Organization

The Regiment consists of a headquarters and headquarters company (HHC) and four special operations aviation battalions. Additionally, Table of Distribution and Allowance (TDA) documents authorize a special operations aviation training company (SOATC) and a systems integration and maintenance office (SIMO).

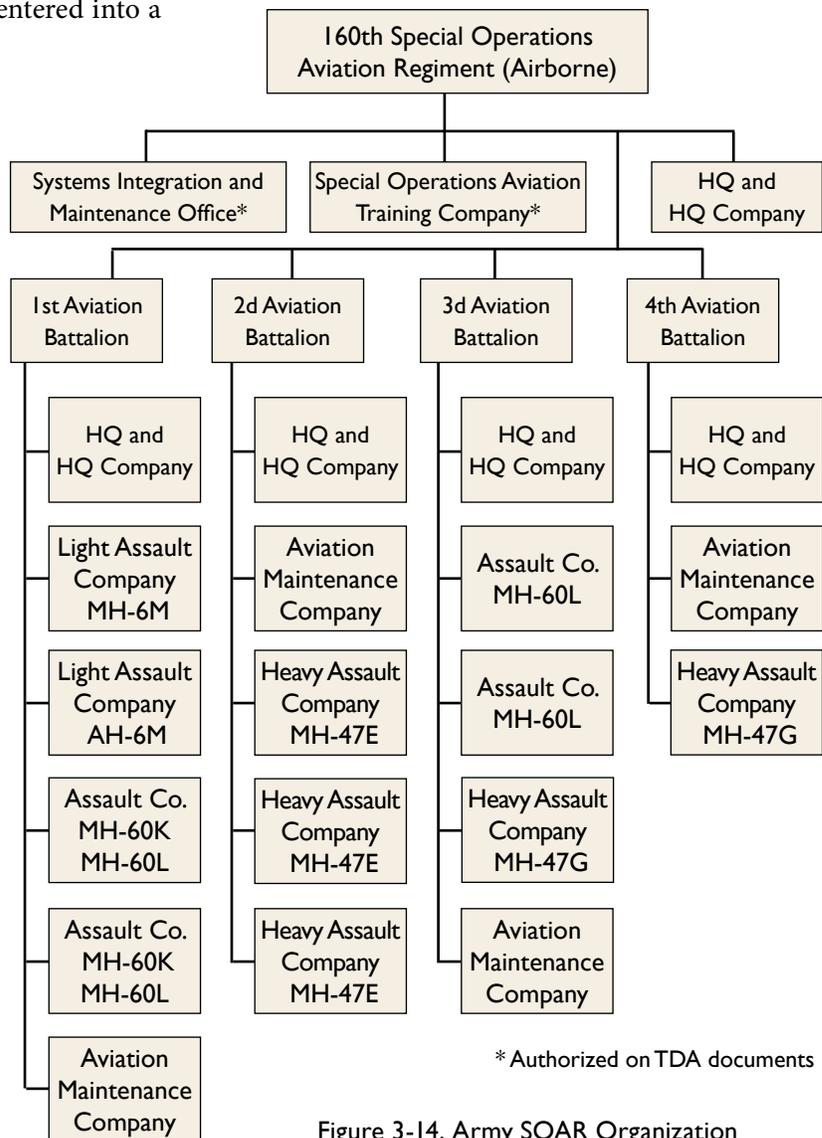


Figure 3-14. Army SOAR Organization

## Responsibilities in Support of SOF CORE Activities

The SOAR supports all special operations core activities. It operates predominantly in a joint environment and may support U.S. military conventional forces, multinational forces, or other agencies in addition to joint SOF. The following summarize the SOAR's execution and support of core activities:

- a. Infiltrate, sustain, and exfiltrate U.S. SOF and other selected personnel.
- b. Insert and extract SOF land and maritime assault vehicles and vessels.
- c. Conduct DA and CAS using organic attack helicopters to provide aerial firepower and terminal guidance for precision munitions, unilaterally or with other SOF.
- d. Conduct SR missions in support of SOF.
- e. Conduct electronic, photographic, and visual reconnaissance in support of SOF.
- f. Recover personnel or sensitive materiel in concert with SOF.
- g. Conduct combat search and rescue CSAR as a part of the SOF component apportioned to the joint personnel recovery center (JPRC) when the mission requires capabilities above and beyond conventional theater CSAR assets.
- h. Conduct assisted E&R in lieu of dedicated CSAR assets.
- i. Perform emergency air evacuation of SOF during the conduct of SO.
- j. Conduct assisted E&R in lieu of dedicated combat search and rescue (CSAR) assets.
- k. Conduct limited strategic self-deployment of aerial refuel capable helicopters.
- l. Support joint SO maritime operations.
- m. Conduct SO water insertion and recovery operations.
- n. Support and facilitate ground and aerial C2, communication and computer systems, and reconnaissance and intelligence operations for SOF.
- o. Provide the C2 element for SO aviation assets and attached conventional aviation assets supporting SO.
- p. Perform aviation unit maintenance (AVUM) and aviation intermediate maintenance (AVIM) for all organic aircraft.

## SOAR Aircraft and Employment Considerations

The regiment possesses three main types of rotary-wing aircraft: the AH/MH-6M Little Bird, the MH-60L/K Blackhawk, and the MH-47E/G Chinook. This variety of aircraft allows for operations in all environments and under adverse weather conditions.

The SOAR normally task-organizes around a battalion and plans, conducts, and supports SO missions for the ARSOF commander or for the theater special operations command (TSOC). With proper personnel and equipment augmentation, a SOAR commander and his staff can serve as a joint special operations air component commander (JSOACC).

### A/MH-6M

The AH and MH-6M are highly modified single-engine light helicopters. The MH-6 can externally transport up to six combat troops and their equipment and is capable of conducting overt and clandestine infiltration, exfiltration, and combat assaults over a wide variety of terrain and environmental conditions. The AH-6 can be armed with a variety of weapons and is primarily employed in close air support of ground troops, target destruction raids, and armed escort of other aircraft. The small size of the A/MH-6M allows for rapid deployability in C-130, C-17 and C-5 aircraft, and extensive aircrew training allows for extremely rapid upload and download times.



MH-6

### *MH-60 L, K and DAP*

The MH 60 is capable of conducting overt and clandestine infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply of SOF across a wide range of environmental conditions. An armed version, the Defensive Armed Penetrator (DAP), has the primary mission of armed escort and fire support. Secondary missions of the MH-60 include C2, external load, CSAR and MEDEVAC operations. The MH-60 is capable of operating from fixed base facilities, remote sites, or oceangoing vessels. All versions are air refuelable from selected USAF and USMC aircraft. MH-60s are deployable in C-17 and C-5 aircraft and can be rapidly built up and employed upon arrival in theater.



MH-60L

### *MH-47G*

The MH-47G is a heavy assault helicopter based on the CH-47 airframe, specifically designed and built for the special operations aviation mission. It has a totally integrated avionics subsystem along with multi-mode radar and aerial refueling capability. In addition to its capability to overtly and clandestinely infiltrate, exfiltrate and resupply SOF across a wide range of environmental conditions, MH-47s provide the ability to support combat operations at extremely high altitudes. The MH-47 is self-deployable when supported by aerial tankers and is deployable in C-17 and C-5 aircraft.



MH-47G

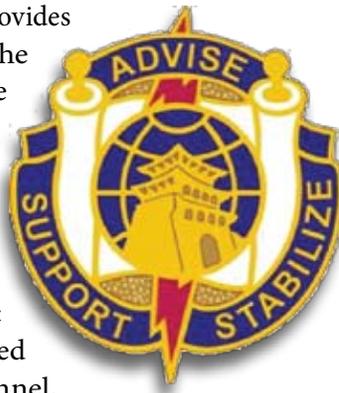
## 95th Civil Affairs Brigade (Airborne)

Civil affairs (CA) provides expertise on the civil component of the operational environment. The commander uses CA capabilities to analyze and influence the human terrain through specific processes and dedicated resources and personnel.

As part of the commander's civil-military operations, CA conducts operations nested within the overall mission and intent. CA significantly helps ensure the legitimacy and credibility of the mission by advising on how to best meet moral and legal obligations to the people affected by military operations. The key to understanding the role of CA is recognizing the importance of leveraging each relationship between the command and every individual, group, and organization in the operational environment to achieve a desired effect.

### Personnel

The soldiers of the 95th CA Brigade (Airborne), located at Fort Bragg, North Carolina, are regionally focused, culturally attuned, and language qualified—maintaining the highest standards of training



and physical readiness in order to be prepared to deploy anywhere in the world on short notice.

### Mission

The mission of CA forces is to engage and influence the civil populace by planning, executing, and transitioning civil affairs operations in Army, joint, interagency, and multinational operations to support commanders in engaging the civil component of their operational environment, in order to enhance civil-military operations or other stated U.S. objectives before, during, or after other military operations.

### U.S. Army Civil Affairs Organization

Until 2006, all Army civil affairs forces were designated as SOF and came under COCOM of USSOCOM. In November 2006, the reserve component (RC) CA units were transferred from USSOCOM to USJFCOM. Concurrent with this action, the RC CA forces were no longer considered SOF. However, USSOCOM retained proponentcy for all CA: this includes doctrinal development, combat development, and institutional training.

All CA units are capable of providing support to both general purpose forces and SOF at the tactical, operational, and strategic levels. Since the transfer of RC to USJFCOM, however, the non-SOF RC CA forces are more oriented towards supporting other conventional forces and the SOF active component CA forces are oriented towards supporting other SOF.

While serving in an initial entry role during contingency operations, the 95th CA Brigade has the capability to rapidly deploy one of its regionally-aligned CA battalions to meet an initial CA support requirement, and then transition that CA support requirement to an RC CA unit as soon as mobilization permits.



95th Civil Affairs Brigade soldiers coordinating local security operations with indigenous officials and local villagers.

**95th Civil Affairs Brigade  
Organization**

The 95th CA Brigade’s task is to rapidly deploy regionally focused, initial entry, Civil Affairs Planning Teams (CAPTs), Civil-Military Operations Centers (CMOCs), CA battalions, and CA companies to plan, enable, shape, and manage CAO in support of a GCC, TSOC, joint forces special operations component (JFSOC), corps, division, or Brigade Combat Team (BCT). The 95th CA Brigade can serve as the core of a JCMOTF. The brigade HQ provides command, control, and staff supervision of the operations of the CA brigade and assigned CA battalions or attached units. The 95th CA Brigade can support the GCC, the TSOC, the joint force land component commander, or the JFSOC. This HQ is rapidly deployable through various means of infiltration, to include static-line parachute, providing USASOC with a responsive, flexible, and modular CA force package.



95th Civil Affairs Brigade soldier collecting civil information from local children.

regionally focused and support SOF while providing the rapid deployment “bridge” for the division and BCTs until replaced by U.S. Army Reserve CA battalions.

The 95th CA Brigade CA battalion rapidly deploys as the initial entry CA force with its CAPTs, CMOCs, CA companies, and Civil Affairs Teams (CATs) to plan, enable, shape, and conduct CAO to support the commander’s situational understanding of the civil component and improve overall decision superiority. The 95th CA Brigade CA battalion has an HHC, a CAPT, a CMOC capable of providing

**Civil Affairs Battalions, 95th CA Brigade**

The CA battalion functions as the tactical-level CA capability that supports the division, the BCT, JSOTF, and forward operational bases. The battalions are

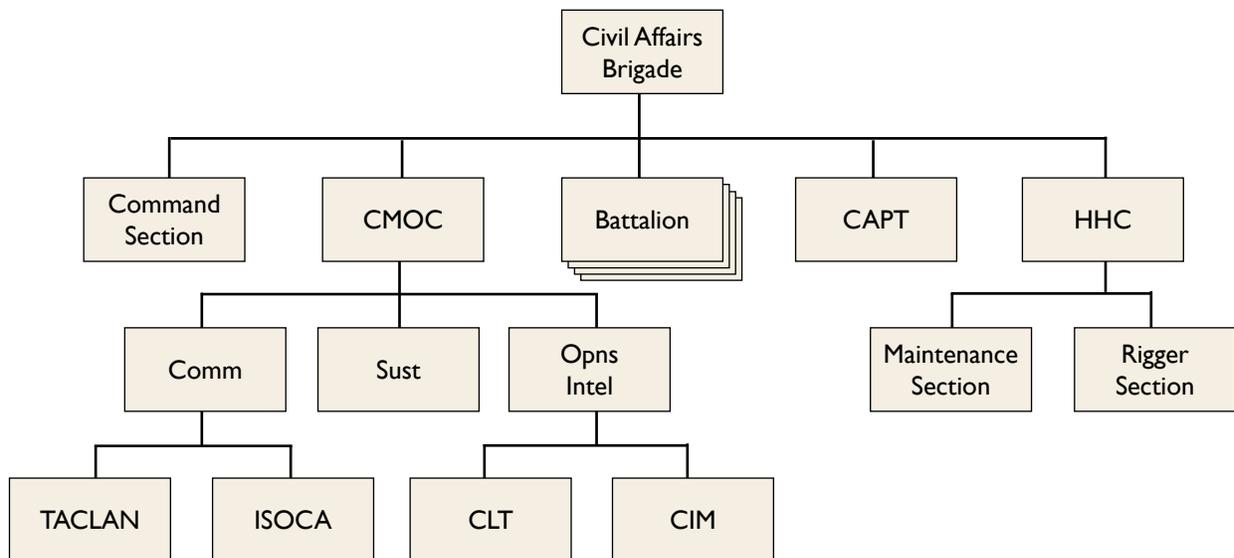


Figure 3-15. 95th Civil Affairs Brigade Organization

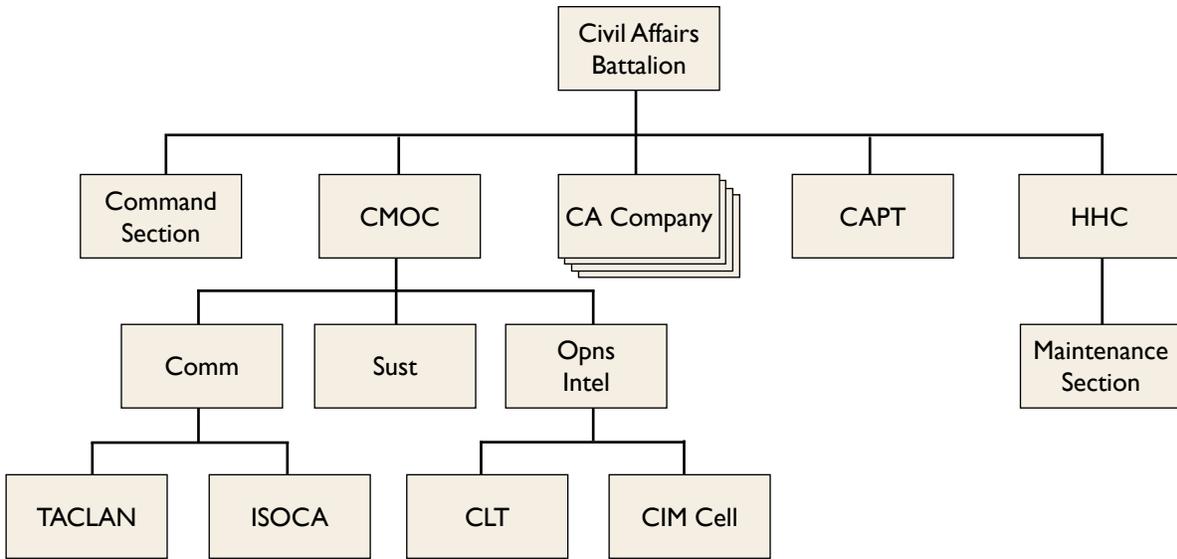


Figure 3-16. 95th CA Brigade CA Battalion Organization

a CLT, and four CA line companies, each with a CMOC. Each CA line company can provide C2 to the assigned CATs and can provide planning, coordination, and assessment at the tactical level.

**Civil Affairs Company**

The CA battalion has four CA line companies, each with a C2 Section, Planning Section, a CMOC, and five Civil Affairs Teams (CATs). The CMOC provides

tactical CA support, to include assessment, planning, and coordination. The CA company assesses the mission planning requirements and develops and coordinates the resources to meet immediate requirements to mitigate civil threats to the supported commander’s mission.

**Civil Affairs Team (CAT)**

The CAT conducts CAO and provides CMO planning and assessment support to tactical maneuver commanders. The CAT conducts civil reconnaissance (CR); conducts key leader engagement by constantly vetting contacts to eventually identify elites within the CAT’s AOR; plans, coordinates, and enables CAO and project management; and provides civil information to the supported unit and CMOC for inclusion of civil inputs to the supported commander’s COP.

A CAT is composed of four personnel: the team chief, team sergeant, and two civil affairs NCOs.

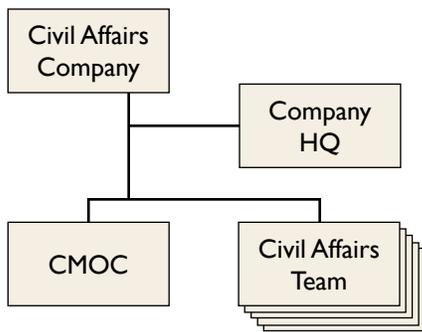


Figure 3-17. 95th CA Brigade CA Company

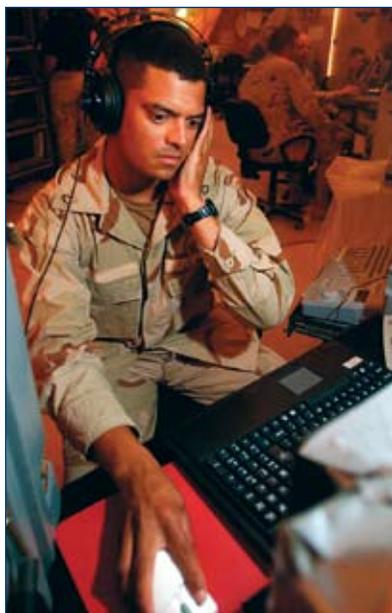
## 4th Psychological Operations Group (Airborne) – 4th POG(A)

Army active component PSYOP forces are organized under the 4th Psychological Operations Group (Airborne). The 4th POG(A) has four regionally-oriented battalions, a tactical support battalion, and a PSYOP dissemination battalion. U.S. Army PSYOP group and battalion headquarters are structured to provide command and control of subordinate units that conduct PSYOP missions.



### *PSYOP Mission*

Army PSYOP forces plan and execute the Joint Force Commanders' PSYOP activities at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels. These forces support all SO missions and conduct PSYOP in support of consolidation missions. PSYOP are a vital part of the broad range of United States diplomatic, informational, military, and economic (DIME) activities. The employment of any element of national power,



A member of the U.S. Army's 4th Psychological Operations Group (POG) edits audio. Special operators broadcast television and radio programming that allows the U.S. to communicate directly to the Iraqi people.

particularly the military element, has always had a psychological dimension.

Foreign perceptions of U.S. military capabilities are fundamental to strategic deterrence. The effectiveness of deterrence hinges on U.S. ability to influence the perceptions of others. The purpose of PSYOP is to induce or reinforce foreign attitudes and behavior favorable to U.S. national objectives.

PSYOP are characteristically delivered as information for effect, used during peacetime and conflict, to inform and influence. When properly employed, PSYOP can save lives of friendly and adversary forces by reducing the adversaries' will to fight. By lowering adversary morale and reducing their efficiency, PSYOP can also discourage aggressive actions and create dissidence and disaffection within their ranks, ultimately inducing surrender. PSYOP provide a commander the means to employ a non-lethal capability across the range of military operations from peace through conflict to war and during post conflict operations.

### *PSYOP Group*

A Psyop Group (POG) is a multipurpose and extremely flexible organization that commands organic and attached elements conducting PSYOP. Figure 3-18 shows the organization of the Active Army POG.

A POG plans, coordinates, and executes PSYOP at the strategic, operational, and tactical levels in support of the President and/or SecDef, combatant commanders, and OGAs as directed by the SecDef. It can establish, operate, and support up to two Psychological Operations Task Forces at the combatant command and JTF level. The President and/or SecDef require at least one airborne POG to support global requirements.

### *POG Personnel*

4th POG (A) Soldiers are regionally focused, culturally attuned and often language qualified maintaining the highest standards of training and physical

readiness in order to be prepared to deploy anywhere in the world on short notice.

The TSOC integrates PSYOP support into joint SOF activities. Task-organized PSYOP units, from theater oriented forces, may be attached to the TSOC for a specific period to provide dedicated support. PSYOP support provide the SOF commanders and their indigenous counterparts the ability to motivate and mobilize crucial segments of the population to enhance the probability of mission success.

**POG Organization**

The Active Army POG consists of a group headquarters and headquarters company (HHC), regional Psychological Operations battalions (POBs), a

tactical POB, a dissemination POB, and an SSD. An RC POG consists of a group HHC, tactical POB, and a dissemination POB. A POG is structured to support conventional forces and SOF.

The 4th POG commands and controls (C2) PSYOP forces and attached elements to conduct PSYOP world wide. Mission dependent, the 4th POG may establish a Psychological Operations Task Force (POTF) to facilitate C2 of PSYOP forces. The 4th POG plans, coordinates and executes PSYOP at the strategic, operational and tactical levels in support of commanders. Although the 4th POG is a direct reporting unit (DRU) to USASOC, it also provides PSYOP forces for contingency, crisis and conventional forces. The 4th POG supports U.S. Army Reserve (USAR) PSYOP forces, mission

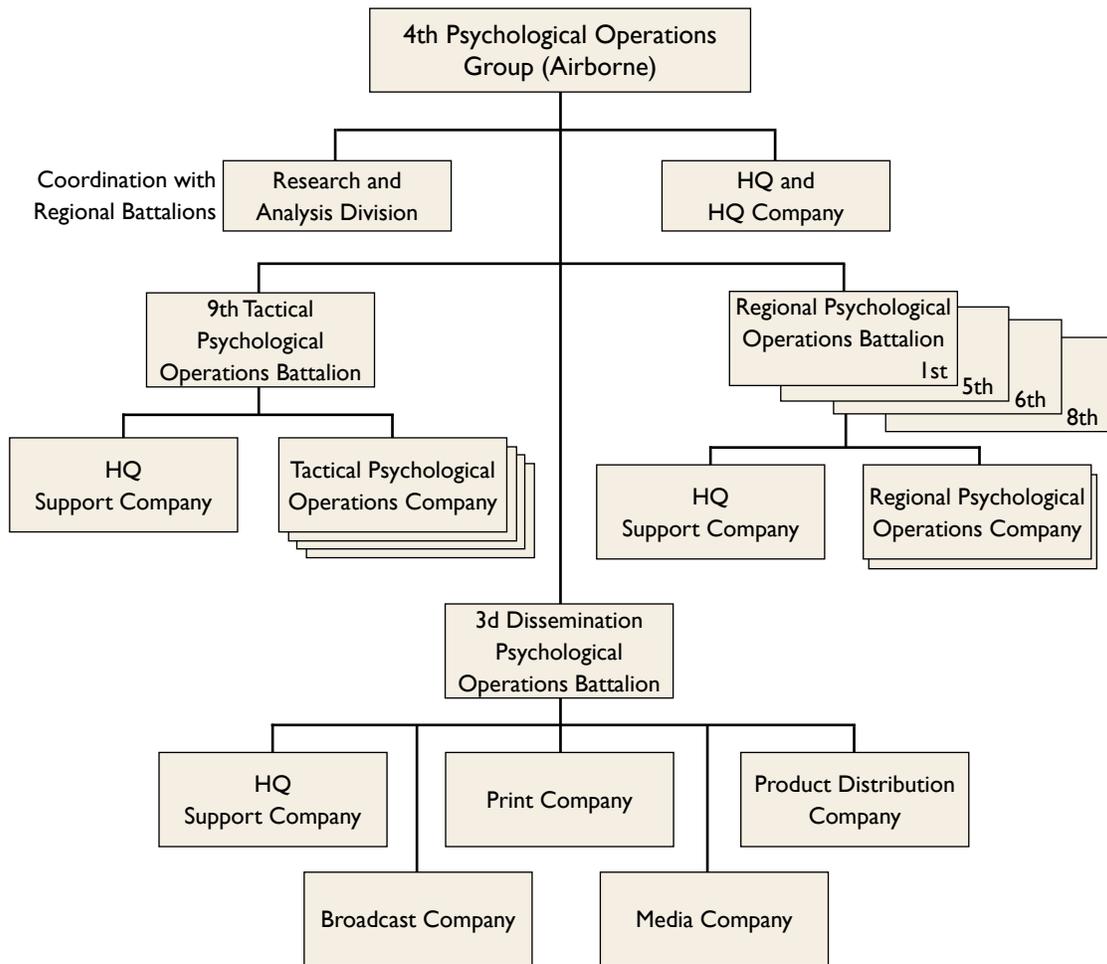


Figure 3-18. Active Army POG

dependent, with: PSYOP product development, PSYOP analysis, PSYOP product distribution and PSYOP dissemination.

### *Research and Analysis Division*

The Research and Analysis Division of the 4th POG (A), at Fort Bragg, North Carolina, is the sole source of finished PSYOP analytical intelligence products that are tailored to the needs of the PSYOP community, geographic combatant commanders, and the intelligence community. The division consists of four regionally oriented Strategic Studies Detachments (SSDs). Each PSYOP regional battalion has an SSD comprised of senior level Department of Army civilians. These Intelligence Research Specialists, commonly referred to as PSYOP analysts, provide area and cultural expertise, near-native linguistic skills, and sophisticated research and analysis capabilities.

SSD analysts continually monitor current events and intelligence through classified and open-source information, allowing them to provide timely PSYOP analysis and advice. Each regionally oriented SSD contains five to eight analysts. Each analyst focuses on a group of countries, and commonly speaks one or more of the languages of the region, as well as having extensive experience traveling and/or living in the region. The analysts are experts in the political, economic, social, military, cultural, and religious aspects of their target countries. Equally important are their knowledge of U.S. policies in the region and their understanding of the level of tolerance, support, or opposition Potential Target Audiences (PTAs) have for these policies.

### *Regional PSYOP Battalions*

The 4th POG's Regional PSYOP Battalions are each aligned with a geographic combatant command, and each maintains a close working relationship with that GCC and its Theater Special Operations Command. One important task of a Regional PSYOP Battalion is to form the nucleus of a POTF. When a GCC is authorized to establish a POTF, the Regional PSYOP Battalion Commander is often tasked to be the POTF Commander, if the POG commander does not assume that mission.

The Regional PSYOP Battalion has the capability to conduct PSYOP planning and PSYOP Target Audience Analysis (TAA), and to develop and design PSYOP products. Regional PSYOP Battalions also task organize PSYOP support elements (PSEs), Military Information Support Teams (MISTs) and PSYOP assessment teams (POATs) from their resources to conduct PSYOP planning and the PSYOP process. The regional battalions rely on the PSYOP dissemination battalion or external agencies to produce products. Each Regional PSYOP Battalion is authorized a Headquarters Support Company (HSC), two Product Development Companies (PDCs), and direct support from an SSD.

### *Product Development Company*

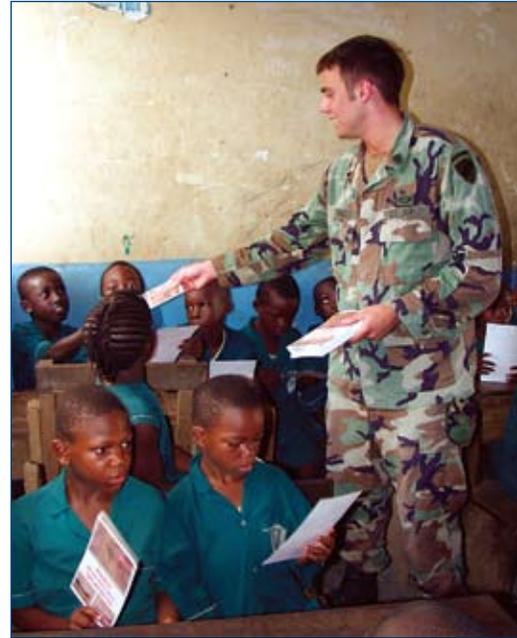
A Product Development Company has a HQ element, four PSYOP Detachments (PSYDETs), and eight Operational Detachments (OPDETs). The HQ element provides administrative, maintenance, and logistics support to the company. The PSYDETs and their assigned OPDETs are capable of conducting the management and review of supporting PSYOP programs, conducting PSYOP planning and TAA, PSYOP design, and PSYOP development. The PSYOP Soldiers assigned to the product development company have extensive cultural awareness and experience in the area of operations (AOR). The PSYOP Soldiers speak the languages of the AOR, are familiar with U.S. policy, Department of State (DoS) Mission Performance Plans (MPP) and GCC theater plans. The product development company may be tasked organized in total to support POTF operations or as PSYDETs and OPDETs (PSEs, MISTs and POATs) to deploy to support the GCC, Ambassador or a TSOC.

**Psychological Operations Detachment.** The subordinate elements of the Product Development Company are organized into four PSYDETs. Each PSYDET has an HQ element and two Operational Detachments (OPDETs). The HQ element coordinates and plans PSYOP activities in support of a GCC, Ambassador, or other agencies. In support of a POTF, the PSYDET is task organized to form a section of a Product Development Center or combined with other PSYDETs to

become an entire product development center. When task organized as a product development center, each PSYDET is capable of conducting: PSYOP target audience analysis, PSYOP plans and programs, PSYOP development and PSYOP testing and evaluation. When operating as individual PSYDETS or OPDETs, PSYOP Soldiers are capable of conducting all aspects of the PSYOP development process, but rely more on the partner nation to conduct PSYOP “by, with, and through” the partner nation. The “by, with, and through” is heavily reliant on the partner nation military and contract commercial assets for PSYOP product development, distribution and dissemination. PSYDETs and OPDETs are also task organized in support of tactical PSYOP forces to provide the same PSYOP functions previously discussed.

**Operations Teams.** The Operations Teams, commonly referred to as OPDETs are the smallest elements of a PDC. The OPDET has the same general capability as the PSYDET, but on a smaller scale. OPDET Soldiers maintain a close working relationship with the SSD analysts in executing the PSYOP process to ensure the cultural relevancy and expertise necessary to influence foreign target audiences. Mission dependent, an OPDET may be task-organized to perform the functions of all or part of the PDC, which include Target Audience Analysis Section (TAAS), Test and Evaluation Section (TES), and Product Development Section (PDS)

The OPDET routinely provides support to GCC objectives and programs, Embassy and Theater Security Cooperation Plans, and TSOC operations and engagement activities as part of an entire PSYDET or by itself. The OPDET may deploy in its entirety or deploy task organized teams that are rotated routinely in order to provide continuous long term support. The OPDET is capable of executing the entire PSYOP process to include production by utilizing production facilities at Fort Bragg or by using participating nation commercial or government facilities. The OPDET is capable of working in any environment whether it is at an Embassy, conducting military support to public diplomacy, at a TSOC providing regional support, or tactically on the ground in uniform supporting military operations.



A PSYOP specialist hands an information leaflet to a third grade child, 25 March 2002. The leaflet tells children about the dangers of touching or picking up unexploded ordnance. PSYOP and civil affairs soldiers spoke to hundreds of local residents as a part of Operation AVID RECOVERY’s community outreach mission in Lagos, Nigeria.

### ***9th Tactical PSYOP Battalion (Tactical POB)***

The 4th POG’s Active Army 9th Tactical PSYOP Battalion consists of a headquarters company and five Tactical PSYOP Companies. The Tactical POB supports all services at corps, JTF-level, and below, as well as SOF. The battalion staff can conduct planning for the component commander up to the corps level. When supporting a corps or JTF, a Tactical POB executes C2 of subordinate PSYOP companies and assists in the planning and execution of PSYOP. Subordinate PSYOP companies support Army divisions or equivalent size service component units. Rarely does an entire tactical battalion deploy as an organic unit but typically tactical PSYOP companies deploy independently and are attached OPCON to Army Divisions or other service equivalents.

**Tactical PSYOP Company.** The Tactical PSYOP Company (TPC) is the main element of PSYOP support to divisions and JSOTF commanders for tactical

operations. It provides the commander the ability to influence the behavioral responses of neutral, friendly, and enemy foreign Target Audiences. The TPC is comprised of a HQ element, a Tactical PSYOP Development Detachment (TPDD) and four Tactical PSYOP Detachments (TPD). Each TPD has four Tactical PSYOP Teams (TPT). The TPC develops, produces, and disseminates PSYOP products in keeping with the TAs, themes and messages that the supported commander is authorized to approve for use in his area of operations (AO). Support required by the commander is based on mission analysis.

The level of PSYOP support required ranges from one TPC per division during phases I thru III to multiple TPDs per brigade during stability operations in phase IV and V. The need for PSYOP forces and PSYOP support increases exponentially during phases IV and V. In recent operations population densities in brigade-equivalent sectors ranged from 500,000 (Kosovo Force) to 2+ million (Operation IRAQI FREEDOM). Tactical PSYOP units are task organized to provide the supported commander with PSYOP staff planning and to conduct tactical PSYOP activities. The TPC has organic product design and development capability and limited production capability. Production requirements that exceed the capability of the TPC must be filled by other theater PSYOP production assets, commercial or other government agency (OGA) assets or produced at Fort Bragg at the static Media Operations Complex (MOC) and flown into theater via military or commercial air lift.

Mission analysis determines the task organization of the TPC HQ. A TPC HQ may be task organized with elements of the PSYOP regional battalion, and broadcast and print support from the dissemination battalion. This support may include a flyaway broadcast system (FABS) or a Special Operations Media System-Broadcast (SOMS-B) to provide the TPC a direct support (DS) broadcast asset. This tactical vehicle-mounted, light print asset provides the TPC with a responsive and mobile digital print capability. The TPC is then able to produce limited quantity PSYOP products, such as leaflets, handbills, posters, and other printed material. The TPC HQ is located with the supported unit Division Main.

### ***PSYOP Dissemination Battalion***

The PSYOP dissemination battalion provides regional and tactical PSYOP units with audio, visual, and audiovisual production support, product distribution support, signal support, and media broadcast capabilities. The PSYOP dissemination battalion exists only in the 4th POG. The dissemination battalion provides support to PSYOP forces from the fixed station location at Ft Bragg, North Carolina and through teams deployed with PSYOP units around the world. The dissemination battalion is comprised of: a headquarters company, broadcast, print, media and distribution companies and the media operations complex (MOC).

### ***Psychological Operations Equipment***

PSYOP forces use a variety of equipment and platforms to plan, develop, produce, distribute, and disseminate audio, audiovisual, and visual products in support of the combatant commander's theater engagement plan. Information-age technologies have not changed the definition or purpose of PSYOP, but rather have enhanced and improved the ability of PSYOP personnel to provide support to geographic combatant commanders, joint task force commanders, and tactical-level commanders. These systems, and the Soldiers who operate them, provide supported commanders with responsive PSYOP support across the spectrum of operations, from the tactical to the strategic levels.

### ***Product Development Workstation-Light (PDW-Light)***

The PDW-Light is a system that provides forward-deployed units in the field limited PSYOP product development. It also provides users the capability to electronically transmit and receive PSYOP product files and related information via the PDS, commercial/military satellite transmissions, single channel ground and airborne radio system (SINC-GARS) radios, or through phone lines using modem hookup. The system consists of a ruggedized product development laptop computer with a 1.7-gigahertz (GHz) Pentium-M Processor, 512 megabytes (MB) of random access memory (RAM), removable hard drive with extra hard drive, built-in digital versatile

disc recordable (DVD-R)/compact disc-rewritable (CD-RW), extra battery, padded carrying case, a photo-quality color inkjet printer, and an 80-gigabyte (GB) external Universal Serial Bus (USB) hard drive. Software includes CorelDraw 11, Photoshop 7.0 for Windows, Illustrator 11, Windows 2000 Pro, and Microsoft Office 2000.

#### ***Product Development Workstation-Heavy (PDW-Heavy)***

The PDW-Heavy is a high-quality desktop publishing system used to develop PSYOP products. In addition, it can produce camera-ready color separations for printing. It is the same system as the PDW-Light, but adds a docking station or port replicator. This system includes one color laser printer with separate black and white (B&W) and color cartridges, 1200 x 1200 dots per inch (dpi); one scanner with flatbed 8 1/2 x 14, USB 2.0, 4800 x 4800 optical; and one external 80 GB harddrive, USB 2.0 (same as PDW-Light).

#### ***Media Operations Complex (MOC)***

The MOC, at Fort Bragg, North Carolina, houses the HPF, the PDF, the Media Production Center (MPC), the 3d PSYOP Battalion Electronic Maintenance Shop (EMS), and the contracted Maintenance Support Team (MST). B Company, 3d Psychological Operations Battalion (Airborne) (POB[A]), operates the MPC. The MPC is normally in direct support (DS) of the supported theater combatant commander or joint force commander (JFC) for the conduct of PSYOP during crisis. The MPC remains in DS until a Theater Media Production Center (TMPC) is established in the AOR or JOA. The MPC then reverts to general support (GS). The MPC also provides GS to all PSYOP forces for execution of international military information and peacetime PSYOP programs worldwide on a daily basis. These activities are done in support of the geographic combatant commander's theater engagement plan. TMPCs support theater-level PSYOP.

#### ***Theater Media Production Center (TMPC)***

The TMPC is a transportable modular system with the capability to produce, edit, distribute, and disseminate broadcast-quality audio, visual, audiovisual, and digital multimedia products. It is equipped to directly support a major theater war (MTW), a

small-scale contingency (SSC), peacetime PSYOP, and a Theater Security Cooperation Plan (TSCP) in any region of the world. It provides direct media support to theater combatant commanders and joint U.S.

combined forces as directed by the President or Secretary of Defense. TMPC capabilities



TMPC

mirror those of

commercial broadcast facilities. It is capable of receiving and transmitting PSYOP products via the PDS and standard command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence (C4I) systems for approval, production/refinement, and ultimately distribution and dissemination.

#### ***Modular Print System (MPS)***

The Modular Print System (MPS) contains three modules: A, B, and C. Module A contains printing equipment that is no longer used. Module B consists of two expandable shelters, each containing one Heidelberg GTOZP52 offset press that can print in two colors at one time or one color, front and back. The maximum paper dimensions for this system is 14"x20", with the largest product measuring 13 3/8"x20", allowing for marginal area. Module C is also expandable and contains a large paper cutter, press plate marker, and a small light table. Modules B and C are capable of limited paper storage space when expanded.

#### ***Deployable Print Production Center (DPPC)***

The DPPC is an M1037 high mobility multipurpose wheeled vehicle (HMMWV) mounted/transportable print system. Print equipment includes a PDW-Light, a high-speed digital duplicator (Risograph) (120 cpm) capable of producing up to 93,000 single-color leaflets in 24 hours, and an electric paper cutter. The generator and environmental conditioning unit (ECU) are mounted on the DPPC trailer for transport. Prime mover is an M1037HMMWV with S-250 shelter. Based on space availability, components of the DPPC may be removed from the shelter and palletized on a 463L pallet for shipment by air.



DPPC

### Loudspeaker Systems

The primary dissemination medium of the tactical PSYOP battalion is the loudspeaker. A three-man (1 x 37F30, 1 x 37F20, 1 x 37F10) dismounted team or mounted teams using the M1025 HMMWV generally conduct loudspeaker operations. Loudspeaker operations are also adaptable to other platforms based on the supported unit's mission. These platforms include tracked vehicles, patrol boats, and helicopters.

### Manpack Family of Loudspeakers

The manpack FOL is a system of modular amplifiers/speakers forming loudspeakers that provide spot and large-area broadcast capability. Configurations include the manpack loudspeaker system (MPLS), the vehicle loudspeaker system (VLS), the watercraft loudspeaker system (WCLS), and the rotary-wing aircraft system (airborne loudspeaker system [ALS]).

### M129E1/E2 Leaflet Bomb

M129 leaflet bomb, which holds about 60,000 leaflets and can be used to disseminate two or more products simultaneously. The M129E1/E2 leaflet bomb is dropped from fixed-wing aircraft. It requires two to four Soldiers to assist in the loading of PSYOP leaflets. Leaflets are hand-rolled before placement inside the bomb. USAF personnel are responsible for loading the bomb on the aircraft and fusing it. The M129E1/E2 can be used only on aircraft requiring forced ejection for release from a bomb shackle. F-16, B-52, and FA-18 aircraft can carry the M129E1/E2.

### PDU-5/B Leaflet Bomb

PDU-5/B, which is a modified MK-20 Rockeye II canister-type bomb designed to replace the M129E1. It is used to drop leaflets from high-performance aircraft such as the F-16. Each PDU 5/B can deliver about 45,000 leaflets in 20 rolls. It has been used in Operations ENDURING FREEDOM and IRAQI FREEDOM. In fact, in Operation IRAQI FREEDOM, PDU-5/Bs were dropped before artillery started hitting targets in Baghdad. It is extremely important to note that leaflets must be rolled into 20 uniform rolls to completely fill the PBU05/B. This requires time and experienced leaflet rolling personnel. Leaflets can not be stacked in the PDU-5/B as in the M129.



Sailors assist PSYOP Soldiers with building a leaflet bomb

## U.S. Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School

The United States Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School (USAJFKSWCS) provides the training, personnel, doctrine, and policy to support ARSOF. USAJFKSWCS serves as the USASOC proponent for all matters pertaining to individual training, develops doctrine and all related individual and collective training material, provides leader development, develops and maintains the proponent training programs and systems, and provides entry level and advanced individual training and education for SF, CA, and PSYOP.

### Organization

USAJFKSWCS, a DRU of USASOC, constitutes the training center and institution of ARSOF. It consists of an HHC, directorates of proponency and of training and doctrine, a joint SO medical training center, a noncommissioned officers academy, a training group, and a department of education.

### Task

The task of USAJFKSWCS is to recruit, train, and educate U.S. Army SF, PSYOP, and CA Soldiers. USAJFKSWCS provides training in advanced skills as required. It supports ARSOF's ability to conduct operations worldwide, across the USSOCOM core functions, by providing superior training, relevant doctrine, effective career management policy, and the highest quality Soldiers to man the Army's premier SO fighting forces.

### Directorate of Special Operations Proponency

The Directorate of Special Operations Proponency is responsible for oversight and management of ARSOF branches, functional areas, warrant officer military occupational specialties, enlisted career management fields, additional skill identifiers, and special qualification identifiers, IAW AR 600-3, The Army Personnel Proponent System. The Directorate

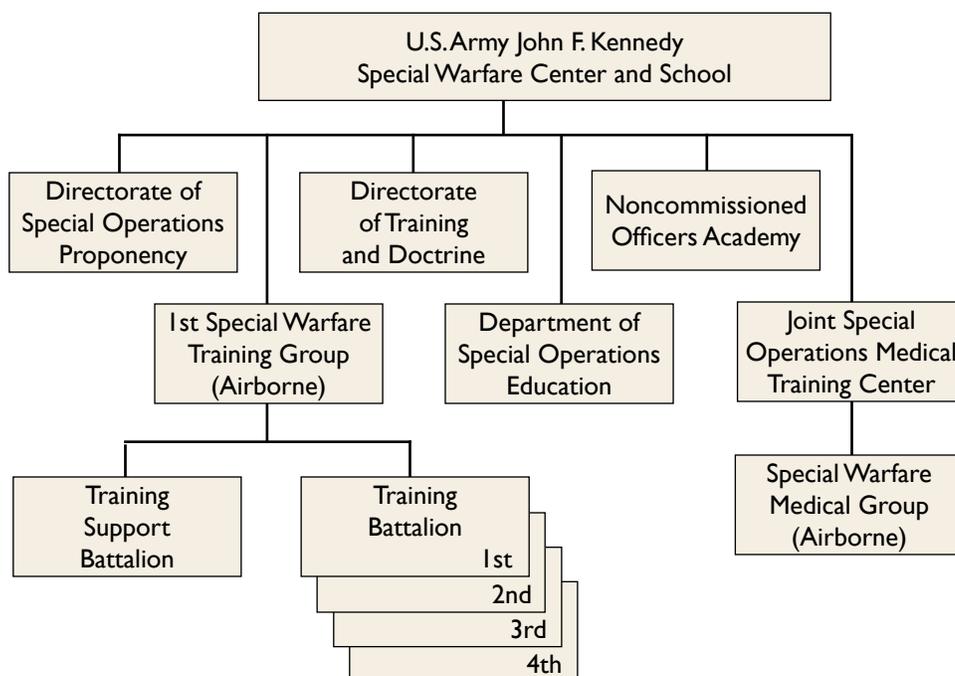


Figure 3-19. United States Army John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School organization.

of Special Operations Proponency develops personnel proponent plans, policies, and programs relative to the eight life-cycle management functions. It performs liaison with the personnel proponency offices in Headquarters, Department of the Army; all branches of the Army; other military Services; and the U.S. Army Accessions Command, United States Army Recruiting Command, and Special Operations Recruiting Company. Directorate of Training and Doctrine

### *Directorate of Doctrine and Training*

The Directorate of Training and Doctrine (DOTD) consists of an office of the director, a training management office, a directorate management office, and six divisions—joint and Army doctrine integration, SF training and doctrine, CA/CMO training and doctrine, PSYOP training and doctrine, media production, and training development. The mission of DOTD is to analyze, design, and develop ARSOF doctrine and training. Additionally, DOTD reviews joint and Army doctrine prepared by USSOCOM, Joint Forces Command, U.S. Army Training and Doctrine Command, Air Land Sea Application Center, and other military organizations for ARSOF integration.

### *Joint Special Operations Medical Training Center*

The Joint Special Operations Medical Training Center conducts the medical portion (Phase 3) of SF medical sergeant training. In addition to training SF medical sergeants, the Joint Special Operations Medical Training Center trains medics for Naval Special Warfare Command, Marine Corps Force Reconnaissance, Air Force Special Operations Command, 75th Ranger Regiment, Civil Affairs, and 160th SOAR(A).

### *Noncommissioned Officers Academy*

The Noncommissioned Officers Academy serves as the USAJFKSWCS executive agent for the Noncommissioned Officer Education System and ensures

quality training, education, and professional development for the Noncommissioned Officer Corps. The Noncommissioned Officer Education System is a premier learning institution that develops adaptive, innovative, and warrior-focused NCOs who have the right mix of training and education for the leadership requirements of Army, joint, interagency, inter-government, and multinational operations.

### *1st Special Warfare Training Group (Airborne)*

The 1st Special Warfare Training Group (Airborne) (SWTG[A]) consists of a group HQ, a training support battalion, and the 1st, 2d, 3d, and 4th training battalions. The 1st SWTG(A) coordinates, conducts, and supervises training through the training battalions; coordinates and supervises course development and design; and participates in training strategy and life-cycle training model development. The 1st SWTG(A) provides administrative, logistical, fiscal, and intelligence support to all personnel assigned or attached to USAJFKSWCS through the group HQ and support battalion.

### *Department of Special Operations Education*

The Department of Special Operations Education serves as the USAJFKSWCS Commanding General's advisor for training and education issues. It provides training and education opportunities that enable the USAJFKSWCS staff and faculty to perform as flexible, adaptive ARSOF leaders and trainers. It also provides library services that support ARSOF education and training, as well as doctrinal and research requirements. The Department archives and makes available historical ARSOF documents and collections. It establishes relationships with civilian and military universities and colleges, civilian agencies, and other organizations.



# Chapter 4. U.S. Naval Special Operations Forces

## Naval Special Warfare Command (NAVSPECWARCOM, also NSWC)

Naval Special Warfare Command was commissioned 6 April 1987 at the Naval Amphibious Base, Coronado, California, and is the naval component of the United States Special Operations Command.

**NAVSPECWARCOM Mission.** NAVSPECWARCOM trains, equips, organizes, resources, deploys and sustains Naval Special Warfare (NSW) forces in support of CDRUSSOCOM and other combatant commander requirements.

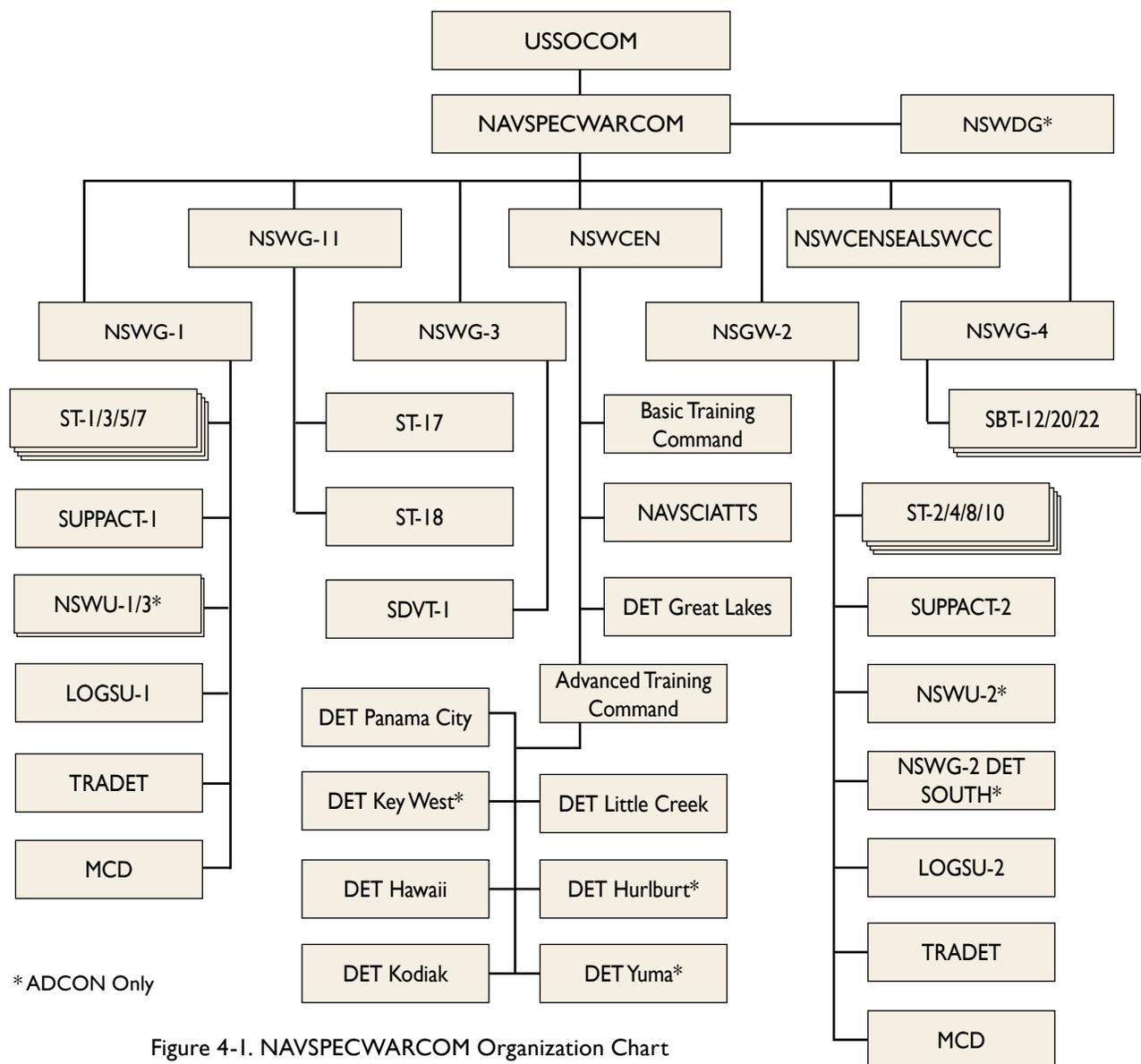


Figure 4-1. NAVSPECWARCOM Organization Chart

Note that the terms *NSW forces* and *NAVSOF* are used interchangeably. The term *NAVSOF* is more easily articulated and understood in the joint arena, as it is consistent with commonly used terms for Army (ARSOF) and Air Force (AFSOF) special operations forces.

**NAVSPECWARCOM Chain of Command.** The Commander Naval Special Warfare Command (CNSWC) is an Echelon II commander: the Navy SOF component commander under, and reporting directly to, CDRUSSOCOM.

CNSWC exercises OPCON (delegated by CDRUSSOCOM) of all U.S.-based NSW forces. CNSWC exercises ADCON over all NSW forces in accordance with CDRUSSOCOM and Chief of Naval Operations (CNO) guidance. For Navy-specific administrative and other matters CNSWC reports directly to the CNO. CNSWC develops the Program Objective Memorandum (POM) and Budget Estimate Submission (BES) for CDRUSSOCOM (MFP-11) and Navy (MFP-2) and ensures adherence to CNO special-interest items.

NAVSPECWARCOM organization is shown in Figure 4-1 on the previous page.

### *Naval Special Warfare Mission*

Naval Special Warfare provides an effective means to apply counterforce in conjunction with national policy and objectives in peacetime and across the spectrum of hostilities from peacetime operations to limited war to general war. NSW forces focus on the conduct of the following seven core activities of special operations:

- a. Unconventional Warfare (UW)
- b. Direct Action (DA)
- c. Special Reconnaissance (SR)
- d. Foreign Internal Defense (FID)
- e. Counterterrorism (CT)
- f. Information Operations (IO)
- g. Counterproliferation of Weapons of Mass Destruction (CP)

Additionally, NSW forces are involved in additional activities such as Security Assistance,



Navy SEALs perform advanced cold weather training in Alaska.

Counterdrug, Personnel Recovery, and Special Activities. NSW also provides maritime specific special operations to meet U.S. Navy fleet requirements.

### ***Naval Special Warfare Personnel***

#### ***Naval Special Warfare Officer***

NSW officers go through the same Basic Underwater Demolition/SEAL (BUD/S) training enlisted personnel attend at the Naval Special Warfare Center. Following BUD/S, it generally takes an additional six months to one year for an officer to become fully qualified. An NSW Officer can expect to spend his entire career in a variety of special operations assignments ranging from operational SEAL and SEAL Delivery Vehicle (SDV) Teams to joint staff or Naval Special Warfare Groups.

#### ***Navy Enlisted SEAL***

The Navy enlisted SEAL is a highly competent and qualified member of the special operations community. All Navy SEALs go through the six month BUD/S training at the Naval Special Warfare Center (NAVSPECWARCEN). Upon completion of BUD/S, all SEALs attend Basic Airborne training and then undergo a 19-week SEAL Qualification Training (SQT) course. They then report to their

first operational SEAL or SDV Team. SEAL operators assigned to an SDV Team must also complete SDV School, generally en route to or within three months of arrival at their new command.

Upon arrival at their first team, SEALs are assigned to an operational SEAL platoon or SDV task unit for their initial operational assignment. The process of training and education is continued throughout their careers through a combination of formal and informal processes including on-the-job skills training, attendance at various service or SOF training courses, and civilian courses of instruction. Once qualified, an enlisted SEAL can expect to spend the remainder of his career in the special operations community.

#### ***Special Warfare Combatant-Craft Crewman***

Special Warfare Combatant-Craft Crewmen (SWCC) are specially selected and trained SOF who operate NSW combatant and other craft in maritime, coastal, and riverine environments. They conduct SO such as over-the-beach and other insertion/extraction of SOF, waterborne guard post, Maritime Interception Operations/Visit, Board, Search and Seizure, Coastal Patrol and Interdiction, Special Reconnaissance, and Foreign Internal Defense, with or without SEALs or other SOF.

## NAVSPECWARCOM Organizations

### *Naval Special Warfare Center (NSWCEN)*

The Naval Special Warfare Center is located at the Naval Amphibious Base Coronado, California. NSWCEN is an Echelon III command under the OPCON and ADCON of NSWC. NSWCEN exercises OPCON and ADCON of subordinate commanders and assigned forces for CNSWC.

The NSWCEN mission is the individual instruction and training of U.S. Navy SOF and other U.S. and foreign military personnel. The NSWCEN also performs other tasks as directed.

The NSWCEN is the educational and professional training center for NSW. As such, it is responsible for individual SEAL and SWCC selection and their basic and advanced training.

### *Naval Small Craft Instruction and Technical Training School*

The Naval Small Craft Instruction and Technical Training School (NAVSCIATTS) is an NSWCEN subordinate command (Echelon IV) located at the Stennis Space Center in Mississippi.

The mission of NAVSCIATTS is to conduct Foreign Internal Defense (FID) and other special operations (SO) tasks ISO Combatant Commanders IAW Commander, United States Special Operations Command priorities using Mobile Training Teams (MTT) and in-resident training to prepare partner nation forces to conduct small craft operations in riverine or littoral environments.

### *Basic Training Command*

The Basic Training Command is an NSWCEN subordinate command (Echelon IV) located at Coronado, California. The Basic Training Command mission is to conduct special operations training and education for U.S. and foreign armed forces and other designated personnel in basic NSW Tactics, Techniques, Procedures, and Equipment (TTP&E) and to award the SEAL and SWCC Navy Enlisted Classification to qualified U.S. forces.

### *Advanced Training Command*

The Advanced Training Command is an NSWCEN subordinate command (Echelon IV) located in

Coronado, California. The Advanced Training Command, with its subordinate training detachments located throughout the United States, provides advanced individual skills training and education. Its mission is to provide NSW forces with standardized, accredited, and Chief of Naval Education and Training (CNET) approved advanced training and curriculum to support NSW community recognized tasks, conditions, and standards.

### *Naval Special Warfare Detachment Kodiak*

Detachment Kodiak is located in Kodiak, Alaska. It is a small training command consisting of a six-man training cadre that specializes in training SQT students, SEAL platoons and Special Boat Team Detachments in maritime cold weather operations. Units train in long-range maritime navigation, across the beach operations, and other cold weather operations.

### *Naval Special Warfare Center For SEAL and SWCC*

The Naval Special Warfare Center for SEAL and SWCC (NSWCENSEALSWCC) is an Echelon III command under Naval Education Training Command (NETC) with additional duty reporting requirements to Naval Special Warfare Command. The NSWCENSEALSWCC Commander is a SEAL O-6 responsible for the career professional development of the NSW community.

The NSWCENSEALSWCC mission is to expand the reach of NSW intellectual capital through the innovative use of modern cyber tools that reduce the time to gain professional knowledge.

### *Naval Special Warfare Development Group*

The Naval Special Warfare Development Group (NSWDG) is located at the Fleet Combat Training Center, Dam Neck, Virginia. The mission of the NSWDG is to provide centralized management for the test, evaluation, and development of equipment technology and Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (TTP) for NSW.

## Naval Special Warfare Groups

### Naval Special Warfare Group Mission

The mission of the Naval Special Warfare Group (NSWG) is to train, equip, deploy and support assigned NSW forces, including exercise of OPCON and ADCON of assigned forces. When directed, NSWGs command and control NSW and/or other forces in exercises and operations.

### Naval Special Warfare Group Tasks

Tasks common to NSWGs are listed below:

- a. Train, equip, support, and deploy assigned NAVSOF
- b. Perform Type Commander functions for assigned forces including readiness evaluation
- c. Plan, coordinate, and conduct unilateral, joint, combined, and fleet SO and exercises as required
- d. Establish and function as the naval component (NSWTF, or also referred to as Naval Special Operations Task Force (NAVSOTF)) of a Combined and/or Joint SO Task Force or numbered fleet for contingency operations or major theater exercises as directed
- e. Provide forces and intelligence capabilities to support exercises and operations
- f. Provide Automated Information System (AIS) and Cryptologic Material Security (CMS) support to the staff and subordinate commands
- g. Support subordinate commands with message dissemination, financial management, medical, legal, chaplain, research, development, testing, and evaluation, Safety and Explosive Safety, and travel orders processing
- h. Support CNSWC planning, programming, and budgeting efforts.
- i. In coordination with NSWC develop, test, and evaluate Tactics, Techniques and Procedures (TTP), ordnance, and equipment
- j. Training and integration of reserve forces.
- k. Support GCC, Navy, and USSOCOM planning as required/directed
- l. Maintain visibility of assets through coordinated management of the Table of Organic Allowance
- m. Exercise ADCON of assigned NSW forces when deployed.

**Naval Special Warfare Groups ONE and TWO tasks.** In addition to the general tasks listed above, NSWG ONE and TWO unique responsibilities include the following:

- a. Training, equipping, readiness assessment and deployment of NSWROs.
- b. Training, equipping and deploying combat support personnel and capabilities in support of the NSWROs and other requirements.
- c. Provide Combat Service Support (CSS) including deployed personnel/detachments, for assigned forces and in support of NSWG-3 and NSWG-4 forces and units when directed.
- d. Maintain the Civil Engineering Support Equipment (CESE) for geographically collocated subordinate organizations.

### Naval Special Warfare Group Organization

An NSWG is an Echelon III command under the OPCON and ADCON of NACSPECWARCOM (Echelon II). NSWG commanders (CNSWGs) exercise OPCON and ADCON of subordinate commanders and assigned forces for CNSWC. As such, NSWG Commanders are accorded the traditional USN honorific title of Commodore. There are five NSWGs.

- a. NSWG-1 and NSWG-2 exercise OPCON/ADCON of the SEAL Teams. NSWGs ONE and TWO also exercise ADCON of their respective NSWUs and detachments. The NSWUs are assigned COCOM to the GCCs.
- b. NSWG-3 exercises OPCON/ADCON of the SEAL Delivery Vehicle Teams.
- c. NSWG-4 exercises OPCON/ADCON of the Special Boat Teams.
- d. NSWG-11 exercises OPCON/ADCON of NSW Reserve Forces.

**Naval Special Warfare Training Detachments.** NSWG ONE and TWO Training Detachments (TRADETs) execute responsibilities for coordinating, directing, and conducting NSWRON training and readiness evaluations.

**Naval Special Warfare Group ONE.** NSWG-1 Mission Statement—the Commander, Naval Special Warfare Group ONE (CNSWG-1) is responsible for organizing, manning, training, educating, equipping, deploying and sustaining assigned forces to conduct SO, principally in support of USCENTCOM and USPACOM, but also in support of other CCDR requirements. Responsibilities include exercise of OPCON and ADCON of subordinate commands and activities including SEAL Teams ONE, THREE, FIVE and SEVEN, Support Activity ONE, Logistics and Support Unit ONE, a Mobile Communications Detachment, and other units and activities; exercise ADCON of Naval Special Warfare Unit ONE and Naval Special Warfare Unit THREE; and act as CNSWC executive agent for NSW support to USCENTCOM and USPACOM.

CNSWG-1 unique responsibilities include:

- a. Act as CNSWC's Executive Agent for advising on NSW support of the requirements of Commanders, USPACOM and USCENTCOM.
- b. Coordinate NSW support of Theater Special Operations Commands/Fleet Commander planning efforts as required ICW the applicable NSWU. (This function is a primary responsibility of NSWUs)
- c. Be prepared to deploy as the core of a Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF).

**Naval Special Warfare Group ONE Subordinate Commands.** NSWG-1 subordinate commands are as follows:

- a. SEAL Team ONE (ST-1)
- b. SEAL Team THREE (ST-3)
- c. SEAL Team FIVE (ST-5)
- d. SEAL Team SEVEN (ST-7)
- e. Support Activity ONE (SUPPACT-1)
- f. Logistics and Support Unit ONE (LOGSU-1)
- g. Mobile Communications Detachment (MCD)
- h. Naval Special Warfare Unit ONE (NSWU-1) (ADCON only, COCOM to CDRUSPACOM)
- i. Naval Special Warfare Unit THREE (NSWU-3) (ADCON only, COCOM to CDRUSCENTCOM)

**Naval Special Warfare Group TWO.** NSWG-2 Mission Statement—the Commander, Naval Special Warfare Group TWO (CNSWG-2) is responsible for organizing, manning, training, educating, equipping, deploying and sustaining assigned forces to conduct SO, principally in support of USEUCOM and USSOUTHCOM, but also in support of other CCDR requirements. Responsibilities include exercise of OPCON and ADCON of subordinate commands and activities including SEAL Teams TWO, FOUR, EIGHT and TEN, Support Activity TWO, Logistics and Support Unit TWO, a Mobile Communications Detachment, and other units and activities; exercise ADCON of Naval Special Warfare Unit TWO and Naval Special Warfare Group TWO Detachment SOUTH; and act as CNSWC executive agent for NSW support to USEUCOM and USSOUTHCOM.

CNSWG-2 unique responsibilities include:

- a. Act as CNSWC's Executive Agent for advising on support of commanders USEUCOM and USSOUTHCOM.
- b. Coordinate NSW support of Theater Special Operations Commands (TSOC)/Fleet Commander planning efforts as required ICW the applicable NSWU. (This function is a primary responsibility of NSWUs).
- c. Be prepared to deploy as the core of a Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF).

**Naval Special Warfare Group TWO Subordinate Commands.** NSWG-2 subordinate commands are as follows:

- a. SEAL Team TWO (ST-2)
- b. SEAL Team FOUR (ST-4)
- c. SEAL Team EIGHT (ST-8)
- d. SEAL Team TEN (ST-10)
- e. Support Activity TWO (SUPPACT-2)
- f. Logistics and Support Unit TWO (LOGSU-2)
- g. Mobile Communications Detachment (MCD)
- h. Naval Special Warfare Unit TWO (NSWU-2) (ADCON only, COCOM to CDRUSEUCOM)
- i. Naval Special Warfare Group TWO Detachment SOUTH (NSWG-2 DET SOUTH) (ADCON only, COCOM to CDRUSSOUTHCOM)



NSWU-2 personnel board the salvage ship USNS Grasp during a Maritime Craft Air Delivery System (MCADS) drop in joint exercise Flexible Leader 07. U.S. Navy photo by Seaman Eddie Harrison.

**Naval Special Warfare Groups THREE and FOUR.** NSWG-3 and NSWG-4 provide SO subsurface and surface mobility capabilities, platforms and personnel.

The following are tasks common to both NSWG-3 and NSWG-4:

- a. Provide personnel augmentation to deployed forces as required.
- b. Supervise configuration control of assigned combatant craft and submersibles.
- c. Coordinate, plan, and administer maintenance/repair availabilities and execute emergency repairs as feasible on all major equipment.
- d. In coordination with NSWC, contribute to specialized weapons and equipment RDT&E.
- e. Support CCDR planning efforts as required.

**Naval Special Warfare Group THREE.** NSWG-3 Mission Statement—the Commander, Naval Special Warfare Group THREE (CNSWG-3) is responsible for

organizing, manning, training, educating, equipping, deploying and sustaining assigned forces, principally for undersea and other maritime special operations in support of CCDRs. Responsibilities include exercise of OPCON and ADCON of subordinate commands and activities including SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team ONE, and advising CNSWC on undersea and other designated combat development areas.

CNSWG-3 unique responsibilities include:

- a. Coordinate combatant submersible integration with host ships and appropriate combatant submersible issues with Commanders Submarine Forces Atlantic/Pacific.
- b. RDT&E of combatant submersibles and associated specialized weapons and equipment in coordination with NSWC.

**Naval Special Warfare Group THREE Subordinate Commands.** NSWG-3 subordinate commands are as follows:

- a. SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team ONE (SDVT-1)
- b. Dry Deck Shelter (DDS) Detachment Little Creek.

**Naval Special Warfare Group FOUR.** NSWG-4 Mission Statement—the Commander, Naval Special Warfare Group FOUR (CNSWG-4) is responsible for organizing, manning, training, educating, equipping, deploying and sustaining assigned forces principally for surface combatant and other maritime special operations in support of CCDRs. Responsibilities include the exercise of OPCON and ADCON of subordinate commands and activities including Special Boat Teams TWELVE, TWENTY, and TWENTY TWO; and advising CNSWC on combatant craft and other designated combat development areas.

CNSWG-4 unique responsibilities include the following:

- a. In coordination with NSWC, contribute to the RDT&E on surface craft and associated weapons and equipment
- b. Serve as the NSWC Executive Agent for SWCC community management and professional development.

**NSWG FOUR Subordinate Commands.** NSWG-4 subordinate commands are as follows:

- a. Special Boat Team TWELVE (SBT-12), Coronado, California
- b. Special Boat Team TWENTY (SBT-20), Little Creek, Virginia
- c. Special Boat Team TWENTY-TWO (SBT-22), Stennis, Mississippi.

**Naval Special Warfare Group ELEVEN.** NSWG-11 organizes, mans, trains, educates, equips, deploys, and sustains assigned NSW Reserve Component units and personnel in support of Naval Special Warfare and Joint Special Operations Commanders worldwide. Responsibilities include the OPCON and ADCON of subordinated commands and activities, including SEAL Teams SEVENTEEN and EIGHTEEN, and advising CNSWC on NSW Reserve Force matters.

NSWG-11 tasks include the following:

- a. Theater Engagement missions (JCETS /FID)
- b. Battle Staff support to JSOTF , JSOG, and NSWRONs
- c. Provide training, logistics, intelligence, and maintenance support for deployed NSW forces
- d. When tasked, support Operational Preparation of the Environment (OPE)
- e. When tasked, provide operational Reserve units in support of deployed NSWRONs.

**NSWG ELEVEN Subordinate Commands.** NSWG-11 subordinate commands are as follows:

- a. SEAL Team SEVENTEEN (ST-17), Coronado, California
- b. SEAL Team EIGHTEEN (ST-18), Little Creek, Virginia.

### ***Logistics and Support Units ONE and TWO (LOGSU 1/2)***

#### ***LOGSU Mission and Tasks***

LOGSUs organize, man, train, equip, and deploy personnel and equipment to provide combat service support (CSS), including administrative, maintenance, logistical, and medical support. LOGSU tasks include:

- a. Logistics support including provision of deployable Combat Service Support Troops (CSSTP), contracting, supply, equipment maintenance, facilities management, military construction, hazardous materials, environmental, combat systems support, Table of Organic Allowance and ordnance management to NSWGs and ST/SBTs in CONUS.
- b. Provide range/training facility support to include logistics, messing, maintenance, scheduling, and operation.
- c. Conduct maintenance in accordance with the Navy's Preventive Maintenance System (PMS).
- d. Provide the following (departmental) support to the SEAL Teams: Supply, PMS, Diving, Ordnance, Air Operations, First Lieutenant/Engineering, Administration, Career Counseling, AIS, Medical,
- e. Provide range/training facility support to include logistics, messing, maintenance, scheduling, and operation.

#### ***LOGSU Organization***

LOGSU ONE and TWO are Echelon IV commands under NSWG-1 and NSWG-2. A LOGSU is commanded by an O-5 Supply Corps officer and is organized into a headquarters element, administrative departments, and operational elements consisting of four Combat Service Support Troops (CSSTPs). A CSSTP normally consists of 17 personnel and provides CSS to deployed NSWRONs and detachments as required.

#### ***LOGSU Capabilities***

Each CSSTP provides the following:

- a. Coordination with and through the appropriate CCDR component commands and offices to provide support to forward deployed NSW forces.
- b. Contracting capability and expertise including small purchases and leases, as authorized by the Theater Executive Agent, and in coordination with the GCC J-4 as appropriate. CSSTP contracting authorities provide the CSSTP supply representative with their supply

re-issue, requisition, procurement, storage, distribution, security, and transportation requirements.

- c. Force embarkation, transportation, equipment maintenance, combat cargo handling, in-theater logistics, construction, contingency engineering, camp development and maintenance. They also provide for limited force protection and perimeter defense. A CSSTP may require reserve augmentation to fully perform its mission.
- d. Assistance with CBRNE decontamination operations.

### Support Activity ONE and TWO (SUPPACT 1/2)

The SUPPACT mission is to train and deploy specially trained combat elements and personnel. SUPPACT 1/2 organize, man, train, equip, and deploy elements to provide SO intelligence collection—intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR)—and analytical capabilities.

#### SUPPACT 1/2 Organization

SUPPACT 1/2 normally provide ISR and analytical capabilities as Cross Functional Troops (CFTPs), led by an O-3 or O-4, with one or more (normally three) subordinate Cross Functional Teams (CFTs) for each deploying SEAL squadron. In addition, Regional Support Troops (RSTPs) support specific geographic commander requirements.

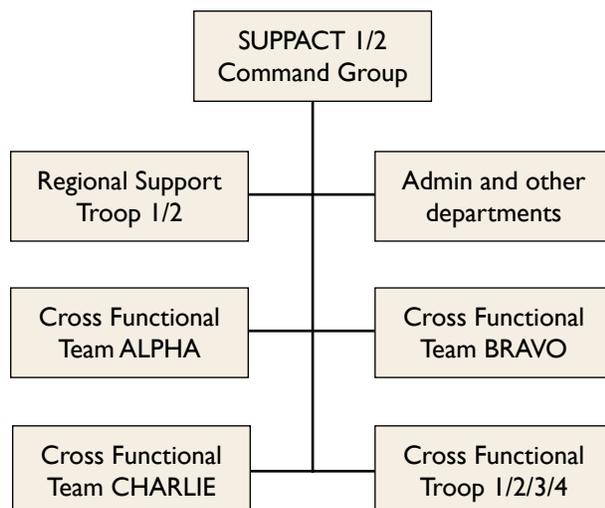


Figure 4-2. Notional Support Activity ONE and TWO

### Mobile Communications Detachments (MCDs)

#### MCD Mission

MCDs organize, man, train, equip and deploy personnel and communications equipment to operate and maintain communications for NSW forces.

#### MCD Organization

MCDs are combat support activities under NSWG-1 and NSWG-2. An MCD has an O-3 Officer-in-Charge and is organized into a headquarters element, administrative departments, and operational elements.

#### MCD Capabilities

NSW communicators provide a variety of voice and data services for communicating with Joint and Fleet commands and units using man-portable, modular, and tactical vehicles as well as messaging systems (HF, UHF, VHF, SHF, and EHF). MCDs are normally attached to deploying NSWROs and provide rapidly deployable communications capabilities in austere environments.

### SEAL Team

SEAL Teams are Echelon IV commands, subordinate to an NSWG.

#### SEAL Team Organization

A SEAL Team is commanded by a SEAL O-5. The teams have a headquarters element and, normally, three SEAL Troops (SEALTPs). Each SEALTP consists of a small C2 element and one or more (normally two) SEAL Platoons (SEAL PLTs). The SEAL PLTs are designated alphabetically with a SEAL Team.

Each SEAL PLT normally consists of three officers and 12–14 enlisted personnel. The SEAL PLT is further divided into two squads, each led by one of the SEAL officers. The number of SEALs needed for a particular mission is driven by the mission requirements. A small number of SEALs task-organized for a specific mission or task is often referred to as an NSW Task Element (NSWTE).

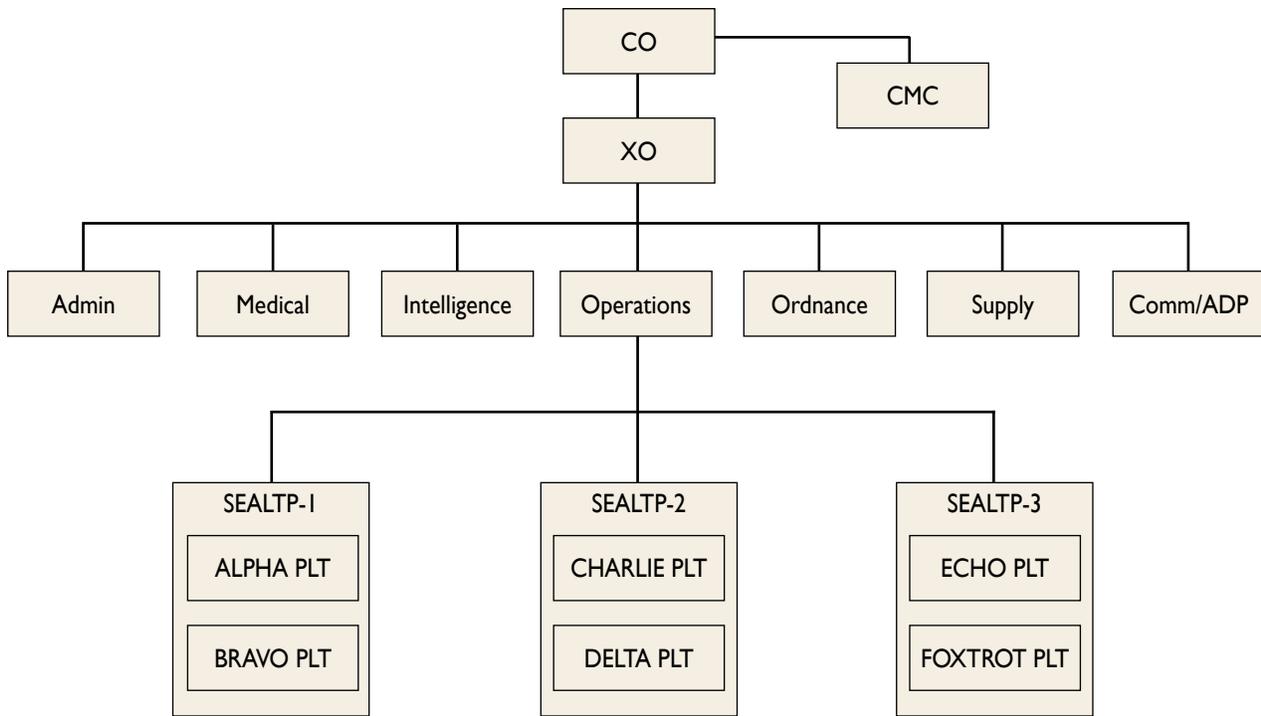


Figure 4-3. Notional SEAL Team Organization

SEAL PLT personnel are dive, parachute, and demolition qualified, and they are proficient in small-unit tactics and maritime operations. SEAL junior enlisted personnel are assigned one or more of seven platoon “department” responsibilities or “specialties” which include Intelligence, Diving, Communications, First Lieutenant, Ordnance, Air Operations, and Medical.

**SEAL Platoon**

The SEAL platoons assigned to a SEAL Team are designated alphabetically, from ALPHA to FOXTROT. A SEAL platoon normally consists of 3 officers and 12-14 enlisted men. A SEAL platoon is further divided into two squads each led by a junior SEAL officer. The number of SEALs required for a particular mission is driven by mission requirements. A small number of SEALs task-organized for

a specific mission or task is often referred to as an NSW Task Element (NSWTE).

SEAL platoon personnel are dive, parachute, and demolition qualified, and proficient in small-unit tactics and maritime operations. SEAL junior enlisted personnel are assigned one or more of seven platoon ‘department’ responsibilities, or ‘specialties’ which include Intelligence, Diving, Communications, First Lieutenant, Ordnance, Air Operations, and Medical.

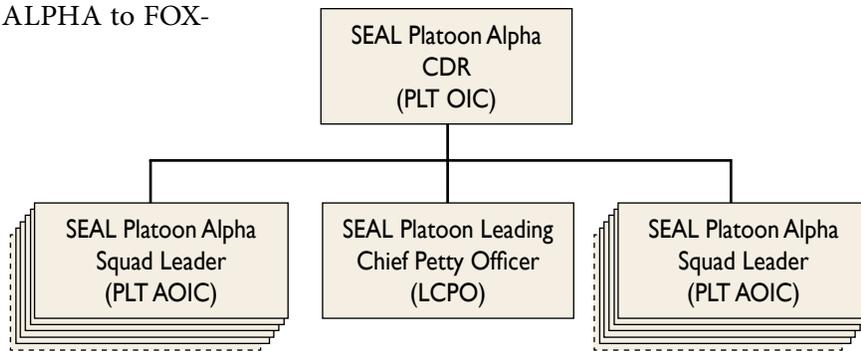


Figure 4-4. Notional SEAL Platoon Organization

### *SEAL Capabilities*

SEAL Team personnel are trained, organized, and equipped to infiltrate across hostile shores and riverine areas to accomplish SO. SEALs possess a high degree of proficiency in DA and SR including, sabotage, demolition, intelligence collection, hydrographic reconnaissance, as well as the training and advising of friendly military or other forces. Subsurface vessels, surface vessels, aircraft, or land vehicles may be used for insertion and extraction of SEALs by sea, air, or land. The infiltration method chosen is dependent on the availability of platforms, the threat, and the environment. SEAL infiltration may employ SSN/SSGN—with or without Dry Deck Shelter, Advanced SEAL Delivery System, SEAL Delivery Vehicle, surface vessels, surface swimming, combat (submerged) swimming, static-line or free-fall parachuting, helicopter (rappelling/fast-roping and helicopter sniper assaults), and mounted/dismounted patrol. While maintaining capabilities to operate in all environments (desert, arctic, littoral, riverine, mountain, jungle, and urban), SEALs tailor their training and preparation to the conditions anticipated in the AO to which they are to be deployed.

All SEALs are trained in the following areas, but designated platoon members maintain a higher degree of proficiency in the following “department” skills:

- a. Intelligence
- b. Dive Equipment Maintenance and Repair (open and closed-circuit)
- c. Electronics (communications and other devices)
- d. First Lieutenant (sea and land mobility systems)
- e. Ordnance—Arms, Ammunitions, and Explosives (AA&E), Visual Augmentation System (VAS), breacher, sniper, and Joint Tactical Air Control (JTAC)
- f. Air Operations Equipment Maintenance and Repair (air assault/support, static line, and freefall parachuting)
- g. Medical (Hospital Corpsman with SO Technician qualification).

### *SEAL Team – Expeditionary*

Six months prior to deployment, the SEAL Team (with its organic SEAL Troops) assumes OPCON of assigned combat support and combat service support elements, to form a Naval Special Warfare Squadron (NSWRON). Combat Support (CS) includes a SUPPACT 1/2 Cross Functional Team (CFT), EOD Det, TCS Det and other joint, fleet, or SOF unit or personnel. Combat Service Support (CSS) elements may include a SEABEE Det; a Mobile Communication Det (MCD); or Individual Augmentees (IA). The NSWRON and its subordinate troops may be redesignated or source provisional task organizations for specific exercises and operations (Discussed Chapter 5). A notional deployed NSWRON providing the C2 element and core staff in support of a NSWTG, SOTF, TF, or other C2 organization as determined by the supported operational chain of command, and/or providing one or more NSWTUs in support of a NSWTG, SOTF, TF, or other C2 organization, is depicted in Figure 4-5 as configured for (notional) sustained or expeditionary combat in support of a named operation.

### *Naval Special Warfare Task Force*

A NSWTF is a provisional naval special warfare organization that plans, conducts, and supports special operations in support of joint, fleet, or other commanders. It may be the naval component of a Joint Special Operations Task Force, or its commander may command the Joint Special Operations Task Force. It may also be the SOF component of a Navy TF. A NSWTF normally provides for command and control of two or more NSWTFs or other subordinate units. It is normally commanded by a SEAL Captain (O-6), often a Naval Special Warfare Unit Commanding Officer or a Naval Special Warfare Group Commander.

### *Naval Special Warfare Task Group*

A NSWTFG is a provisional NSW task organization that plans, conducts, and supports special operations in support of joint force special operations components and/or fleet commanders. It is comprised of a command and control element and one or more

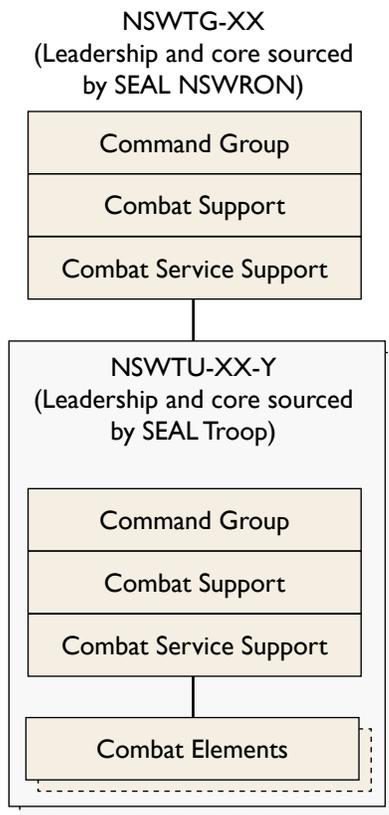


Figure 4-5. Notional Deployed NSW Squadron

subordinate NSWTUs or other units or forces. It is normally commanded by a SEAL Commander (O-5), often the Commanding Officer of a NSWRON.

#### **Naval Special Warfare Task Unit**

A NSWTU is a provisional NSW task organization consisting of a C2 element, one or more SEAL platoons, and/or other combat elements, combat support, combat service support, mobility and other attachments required to plan, C2, conduct, and sustain SO. A NSWTU is normally commanded by a SEAL Lieutenant Commander (O-4) or senior Lieutenant (O-3).

#### **Naval Special Warfare Task Element**

A NSWTE is a provisional NSW task organization generally used to refer to smaller tactical/maneuver combat or combat support elements task organized to conduct a given mission.

## **Special Boat Teams (SBTs)**

### **Special Boat Team Mission and Tasks**

The mission of a SBT is to organize, man, train, equip and deploy SO combatant craft and crews as Special Boat Troops (SBTP) to conduct SO.

Planning, training, and preparation tasks include:

- a. Train and equip assigned forces to meet the requirements of CCDR Mission Guidance Letters, FXP-6, and METLs.
- b. Form SBTPs into cohesive force packages for deployment and employment.

Specific SBT operational tasks include Coastal Patrol and Interdiction (CP&I), SO in a riverine, coastal and maritime environment, including mobility and other support to SEALs and other SOF.

### **Special Boat Team Organization**

SBTs are Echelon IV commands assigned to NSWG-4. SBTs consist of maritime special operations forces and support personnel organized, trained, and equipped to operate and support a variety of combatant craft in maritime, coastal and riverine environments.

An SBT is commanded by an O-5 SEAL and is organized into a headquarters element, administrative and logistics support elements, and operational/combat elements normally consisting of three SBTPs. An SBTP is led by a SEAL O-3 and consists of a small C2 element, CSS and other capabilities, and one or more SB Detachments (SBD). An SBD normally consists of two craft and crew (SWCC), and may include a small Maintenance Support Team (MST). When deployed, SBTPs may be attached to a NSWRON or detach as directed by the Commander, NSWU to conduct operations separate from NSWRON C2 and oversight.

SBTs 12 and 20 provide Special Boat Troops-Coastal (SBTP-C) which normally consist of one MK V Det and three RIB Dets. SBT 22 provides Special Boat Troops-Riverine (SBTP-R) which normally consist of two SOC-R Dets.

### Special Boat Team Capabilities

SBT personnel operate and maintain a variety of combatant and other craft for maritime SO. The craft most frequently employed are high speed combatant craft designed for delivery of SOF in littoral and riverine environments. Lightly armed and armored NSW combatant craft employ stealth, surprise, speed and agility in the conduct of SO. Like their SEAL counterparts, SWCC personnel are specially trained and selected SOF.

**Infiltration/Exfiltration.** SWCC may employ combatant or other craft to infiltrate and exfiltrate SEALs and other SOF, allied and/or, indigenous forces, or non-combatants. Additionally, SBDs may be used to transport limited numbers of detainees from SOF objectives to afloat or ashore temporary holding facilities as well as personnel recovery.

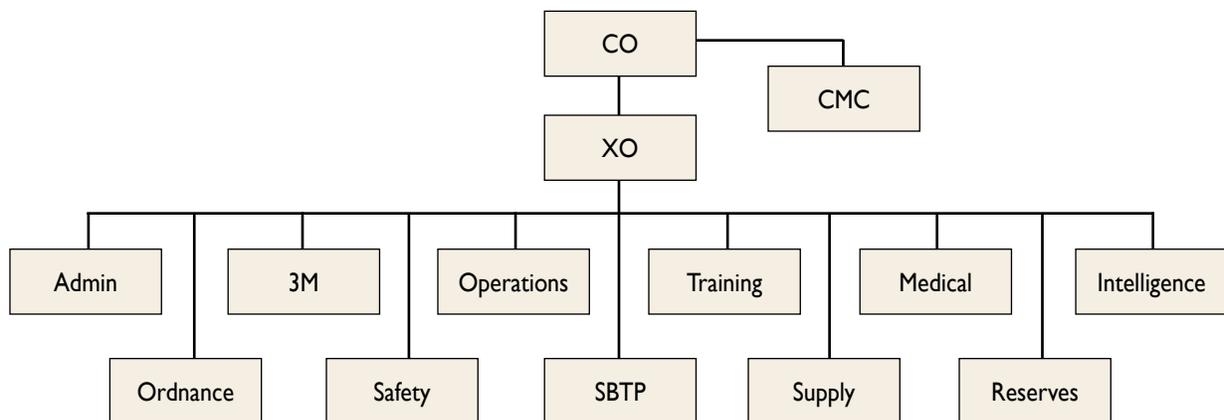
**Coastal Patrol and Interdiction.** SWCC may conduct Coastal Patrol and Interdiction (CP&I) and may provide limited naval gunfire support (to maneuver forces).

**Command, Control, and Communication.** SWCC may employ their craft to provide tactical secure voice communications to include acting as a mobile or fixed combat communications 'relay'.

**Intelligence.** SWCC may employ craft to conduct reconnaissance and surveillance, as well as act as platforms for employment of signals intelligence personnel and their equipment.

**Mobility.** NSW RIB and SOC-R Detachments can be transported to an AO overland, using either vehicle line-haul or organic prime movers, or by sea, or airlift. The large size of the MK-V SOC and its transporter make impractical overland transits of anything but short distances, normally from airport or seaport of debarkation to a suitable launch or recovery point. A heavy-lift crane is required for MK V launch and recovery. NSW combatant craft may operate from, or be supported by U.S. Navy, USNS and allied ships. This includes operating with a ship that is acting as an Afloat Forward Staging Base (AFSB) and able to refuel, rearm, launch and recover or otherwise provide support that extends the range, endurance, and reach of combatant or other craft for a given mission.

**Noncombat Operations.** SBTs may support operational test and evaluation, provide emergency disaster relief or evacuation assistance, and conduct FID. FID often involves training on indigenous or host/partner nation craft and equipment.



Note: SBTs 12/20 provide SBTP-C, SBT 22 provides SBTP-R

Figure 4-6. Notional Special Boat Team Organization

### ***Special Boat Team TWELVE (SBT-12)***

SBT-12 is based in Coronado California. It is commanded by a Navy Commander (O-5) and consists of a headquarters element, sixteen Rigid Hull Inflatable Boat (RIB) Detachments, and five MK V Special Operations Craft (SOC) Detachments. Each Detachment normally consists of two boats with crews. SBT-12 supports special operations missions for West Coast Naval Special Warfare forces and deploys detachments to Naval Special Warfare Unit ONE, and to Detachments throughout the Pacific and Central areas of operation. SBT-12 is under the operational and administrative control of Naval Special Warfare Group FOUR.



Special Warfare Combatant-craft Crewmen (SWCC) from Special Boat Team 20 maneuver into a stack formation after completing a free-fall parachute jump from an Air Force C-130 at approximately 12,500 feet altitude. U.S. Navy photo by Shane Hollar.

### ***Special Boat Team TWENTY***

Special Boat Team TWENTY (SBT-20) is based in Little Creek, Virginia. It is commanded by a Navy Commander (O-5), and consists of a headquarters element and thirteen Rigid Inflatable Boat (RIB) detachments and four MK V Special Operations Craft (SOC) Detachments. Each detachment normally consists of two boats. SBT-20 supports special operations missions for East Coast Naval Special Warfare forces and deploys detachments to NSWU-2. SBT-20 focuses on providing operational support to the European and Atlantic theaters of operations. SBT-20 is under the operational and administrative control of Naval Special Warfare Group FOUR.

### ***Special Boat Team TWENTY-TWO***

Special Boat Team TWENTY-TWO (SBT-22) is based in Stennis, Mississippi. It is commanded by a Navy Commander (O-5) and consists of a headquarters element, two Patrol Boat Light (PBL) detachments (used for training purposes only), and eight Special Operations Craft-Riverine (SOC-R) detachments. Each detachment consists of two boats with crews. SBT-22 focuses on providing riverine support

in Southern and European theaters of operations. SBT-22 is under the operational and administrative control of Naval Special Warfare Group FOUR.

### ***SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team***

The SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team (SDVT-1) operates the SEAL Delivery Vehicle (SDV), Dry Deck Shelter (DDS), and Advanced SEAL Delivery System (ASDS) combat systems and related equipment in the conduct of SO.

#### ***SDVT Mission and Tasks***

The SDVT mission is to organize, man, train, equip, and deploy forces to employ combatant submersibles in SO, and other SO as tasked.

#### ***SDVT Planning, Training, and Preparation Tasks***

Train and equip assigned forces to meet the requirements of CCDR Mission Guidance Letters, FXP-6/METL, and other taskings.

#### ***SDVT Operational Tasks***

SDVT-specific tasks include employment of combatant submersibles to conduct SO.

### *SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team Organization*

SDVT-1 is a subordinate Echelon IV command assigned to NSWG-3. The SDVT is organized into a headquarters element, administrative and logistics support elements, and operational/combat elements consisting of SDV Troops (SDVTPs), ASDS, and other task-organized elements.

#### *SDVT SDV Troop*

An SDVTP consists of a C2 element, SDV Platoon and DDS Platoon. An SDV platoon is normally comprised of two SDVs, SEALs including SDV driver and navigator, and support personnel.

#### *SDVT Advanced SEAL Delivery System*

The Advanced SEAL Delivery System capability includes a C2 element, the ASDS operators (two submarine officers, two SEAL officers, one Limited Duty Officer Engineer), support personnel (11 fleet-source technicians), one ASDS, and associated equipment. An ASDS may be augmented by a variety of force packages (for example, SEAL combat swimmers) and employ specialized equipment (such as sensors) to accomplish a range of missions.

### *Naval Special Warfare Units*

NSWUs (not a NSW Task Unit, which is a provisional task organization) normally exercise OPCON of all NSW forces in the respective GCC's AOR. ADCON of NSW forces is exercised by their parent NSWG. The commanding officer of an NSWU is an NSW Captain (0-6) and is the maritime component of the TSOC. NSWU COs may be assigned (and receive designations for such) to act as a commander under the TSOC and/or as a commander under the Navy component (fleet) commander for a specified operation, exercise or other purpose. In this case, the NSWU Commanding Officer will be designated as either an NSWTF, NSWTG or other appropriate designation under the Joint SOF commander, and/or as a CTF subordinate to the Navy commander.

NSWUs are assigned COCOM to the GCCs (OPCON of the NSWU is normally exercised for the GCC by the CDRTSOC) as follows:

- a. NSWU-1 in Apra Harbor, Guam assigned COCOM to USPACOM and ADCON to NSWG-1.
- b. NSWU-2 in Stuttgart, Germany assigned COCOM to USEUCOM and ADCON to NSWG-2.
- c. NSWU-3 in Manama, Bahrain assigned COCOM to USCENTCOM and ADCON to NSWG-1.
- d. NSWG-2 Det SOUTH assigned COCOM to USSOUTHCOM and ADCON to NSWG-2.

## Naval Special Warfare Weapons Systems

### *MK V Special Operations Craft (MK V SOC)*

The 82-foot MK V SOC primary mission is a medium range insertion and extraction platform for special operations forces in a low to medium threat environment. The secondary mission is limited Coastal Patrol and Interdiction (CP&I), specifically limited duration patrol and low-to-medium threat coastal interdiction.

The MK V SOC will normally operate in a two-crew detachment. A maintenance support element is inherent in each MK V SOC detachment and provides technical assistance and maintenance support during mission turnaround. The MK V SOC is fundamentally a single sortie system with a 24-hour turn-around time. The typical MK V SOC mission duration is 12 hours. The MK V SOC is fully interoperable with the NSW RIBs. As such, both could be employed from a Forward Operating Base (FOB), in a synergistic effect.

An MK V SOC detachment consists of two crew and support equipment and is deployable on two USAF C-5 aircraft into the gaining theater within 48 hours of notification. A detachment is transportable over land on existing roadways. Detachments are not configured nor manned to provide their own security, messing, or berthing for personnel while forward deployed.



A MK V special operations craft provides cover fire during the annual East Coast SEAL reunion capabilities demonstration. U.S. Navy photo.

#### Design Characteristics

Length..... 81' 2"  
 Beam ..... 17' 5 3/4"  
 Draft..... 5'  
 Displacement ..... 57 tons (full load)  
 Fuel Capacity ..... 2,600 gallons  
 Propulsion ..... 2 MTU 12V396  
 diesels (2,285 horsepower each)  
 2 KaMeWa waterjets  
 Aluminum hull with 5 watertight compartments  
 Radar, full suite communications (HF, UHF, HF, SATCOM), GPS, IFF

Complement: 1 officer, 5 enlisted

Detachment: 16 SOF combat-loaded operators with 4 CRRCs

#### Performance Criteria

Max Speed..... 45–48 knots for 250 nautical miles in Sea State 2  
 Cruising Speed 25–40 knots Sea State 3  
 Seaworthiness ..... Survive through Sea State 5  
 Max Range ..... 500 NM (2 engines at 45 knots)

#### Armament

5 pintles supporting any combination of .50-caliber machine guns, M60 machine guns, MK 19 grenade launchers

#### Small arms

Preplanned product improvement: Mounting stations for GAU-17 Minigun, MK 95 Twin 50-cal machine gun, MK 38 chain gun

#### Rolling Stock per two boat detachment

2 MK V SOC transporters  
 2 M9161A prime movers  
 2 M1083 5-ton trucks  
 4 M1097 HMMWVs with S250 shelters  
 1 5-ton forklift

### *Special Operations Craft-Riverine (SOC-R)*

The 25-foot SOC-R is a special operations platform, fully capable of operation in riverine, littoral and light-weather coastal environments. The SOC-R is a quick, maneuverable craft that can traverse shallow, restricted waterways with little effect from surface or subsurface obstacles, while carrying large payloads. The SOC-R is designed to withstand the forces generated by operating the boat at maximum attainable speed in all directions in sea state 2 (1–3 foot significant wave height) and with judicious handling in a sea state 3 (4–5 foot significant wave height). Noteworthy characteristics of the craft include its low noise signature (virtually undetectable from noise at idle), its extreme maneuverability, and shallow draft.

The primary mission of the SOC-R involves clandestine insertion and extraction of special operations forces into a low-to-medium threat environment in a riverine arena. Secondary mission capabilities include providing fire support, serving as a staging area and reconnaissance platform, acting as a waterborne guard post, and operating as an interdiction or SAR craft.

The fact that the SOC-R is water-jet propelled allows for shallow water operations at full throttle providing quick extractions if the situation warrants.

The large bow and stern gunwale flats are designed for quick embarkation and debarkation. The ¼" aluminum-hull bottom, coupled with zero appendage drag of the water jet, allows for operating in debris congested waters. Narrow waterways of just over 26' can be operated in effectively because of the craft's ability to spin about a pivot point.

The mission capabilities of the SOC-R are directly related to its performance characteristics and configuration. The SOC-R has been certified for Low Velocity Air Drop (LVAD), Internal Air Transport (IAT), and External Air Transport (EATS).

#### *Principal Characteristics*

##### General

Length Overall .... 26'0"

Beam Overall ..... 9'0"

Height Overall ..... 6'0"

Draft to Keel..... Static 18"

Dynamic 6" – 8"

Fuel capacity ..... 100 Gals

Construction..... Aluminum modified Shallow -V/18 Deg Hull

Propulsion Engine: SEATEK 6-4V-9L Diesel/640hp

Engine Performance: 600 Bps/3150 rp

Propulsor..... Hamilton 291 Water-jet



Two Special Operations Craft-Riverine maneuver during live-fire training. U.S. Navy photo Seaman Gerstenslager.

**Operational Weight Data**

Length Overall .... 26'0"

Light (w/Full Fuel): 8,893 lbs

Payload Crew & Gear

(2) @ 240 lbs each: 480 lbs

Passengers & Gear

(8) @ 275 lbs each: 2,200 lbs

Comm Equipment: 245 lbs

Weapons & Ammo: 1,107 lbs

Max payload: 4,032 lbs

Full load Weight: 12,925 lbs

**Performance (Full Load)**

Max Speed @ RPM: 41 mph @ 3,130 RPM

Max sustained speed @ RPM: 35 mph @ 2,950 RPM

Cruise Speed @ RPM: 34 mph @ 2,650 RPM

Range @ Cruise Speed: 150 Statute miles

Acceleration (0-25 knots): 25 sec

Max Operational Sea State: SS 2

Max Capable Sea State: SS 3

**Ancillary Systems**

Weapons: 2 FWD/3 AFT: M60 7.62 mm, MK-19, M2HB .50 cal (Port, Stbd, Centerline Aft)

Navigation: Radar/GPS

Communications: UHF/VHF LOS, UHF SAT

LVAD/IAT

C-130: 1 Craft + Prime mover

C-5: 2 Craft + Prime mover

**Rigid Inflatable Boat (RIB)**

The 11-meter RIB is a high speed, high buoyancy, extreme weather craft with the primary mission of insertion/extraction of SEAL tactical elements from enemy occupied beaches.

The RIB is constructed of glass-reinforced plastic with an inflatable tube gunwale made of a new hypalon neoprene/nylon reinforced fabric.

The RIB has demonstrated the ability to operate in light-loaded conditions in Sea State 6 and winds of 45 knots. For other than heavy weather coxswain training, operations are limited to Sea State 5 and winds of 34 knots or less.

The 11-meter RIB (NSW RIB) carries a crew of three and allows for a SEAL squad delivery capability.

**Design Characteristics****11-meter RIB**

Length: 11 meters

Beam: 11'

Draft: 3'

Weight: 14,700 lbs

Propulsion: Two-Caterpillar 3126 DITA

Complement: 3 crew/8 passengers

Radios: Radar, HF, UHF, VHF, SATCOM Radios

**Performance Criteria**

Speed: 35+ knots

Range: 200 nautical miles

Seaworthiness: Sea State 5

Armament: Forward and aft mounts capable of M-60, M-2, or MK 19



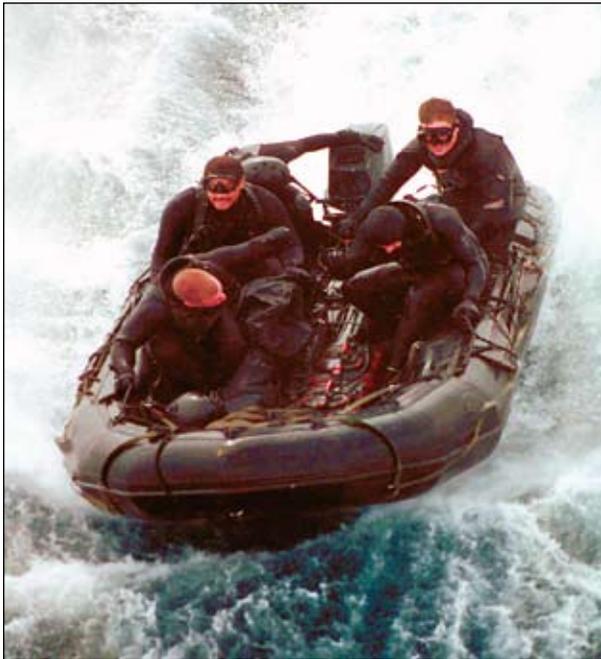
Naval Special Warfare combatant-craft crewmen operate a Rigid Inflatable Boat from a forward location. The RIB is equipped with 50-caliber machine guns. U.S. Navy photo.

### *Combat Rubber Raiding Craft (CRRC)*

The CRRC is used for clandestine surface insertion and extraction of lightly armed SOF. They are employed to land and recover SOF from over the horizon. The CRRC is capable of surf passages. The CRRC may be launched by air (airdrop/helo cast) or by craft (LCU, LCM). It may also be deck launched or locked-out from submarines. It has a low visual electronic signature and is capable of being cached by its crew once ashore. It uses one 35 55 horsepower engine.

#### Design Characteristics

Length:	15' 5"
Beam:	6' 3"
Draft:	2"
Weight:	265 lbs without motor or fuel
Speed:	18 knots, no load
Range:	Dependent on fuel carried
Complement:	8 max



Combat Rubber Raiding Craft

### *SEAL Delivery Vehicle (SDV) MK VIII*

The SDV MK VIII is a “wet” submersible, designed to carry combat swimmers and their cargo in fully flooded compartments. Submerged, operators and passengers are sustained by the individually worn underwater breathing apparatus (UBA). Operational scenarios for the vehicle include underwater mapping and terrain exploration, location and recovery of lost or downed objects, reconnaissance missions, and limited direct action missions.

The vehicle is propelled by an all electric propulsion subsystem powered by rechargeable silver zinc batteries. Buoyancy and pitch attitude are controlled by a ballast and trim system; control in both the horizontal and vertical planes is provided through a manual control stick to the ruddier, elevator, and bow planes. A computerized Doppler navigation sonar displays speed, distance, heading, altitude, and other piloting functions. Instruments and other electronics units are housed in dry, watertight canisters. The special modular construction provides easy removal for maintenance.

Major subsystems are hull, propulsion, ballast/trim, control, auxiliary life support, navigation, communications, and docking sonar.



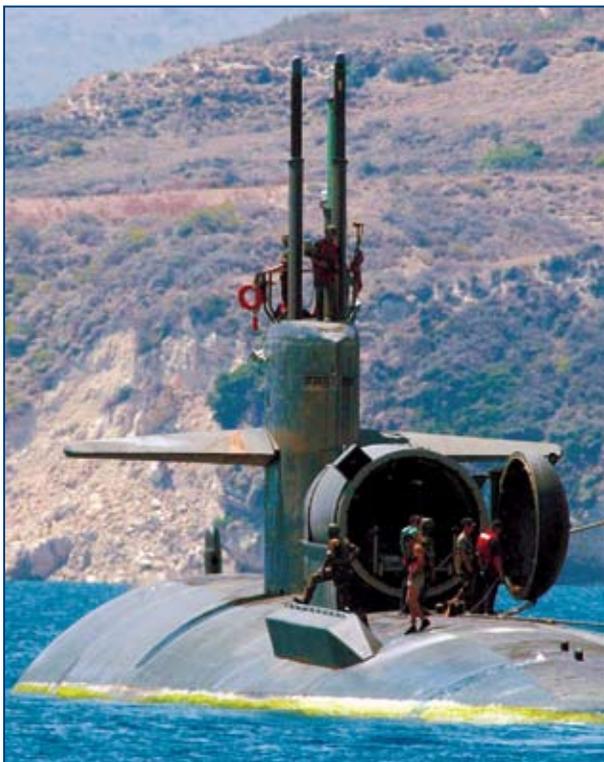
Seal Delivery Vehicle

### Dry Deck Shelter (DDS)

The DDS allows for the launch and recovery of an SDV or combat rubber raiding craft (CRRC) with personnel from a submerged submarine. The DDS consists of three modules constructed as an integral unit. The first module is a hangar in which an SDV or CRRC is stowed. The second module is a transfer trunk to allow passage between the modules and the submarine. The third module is a hyperbaric recompression chamber. The DDS provides a dry working environment for mission preparations. In a typical operation the DDS hangar module will be flooded, pressurized to the surrounding sea pressure, and a large door opened to allow for launch and recovery of the vehicle. A DDS can be transported by USAF C-5/C-17 aircraft, rail, highway, or sealift.

**DDS Design Characteristics:**

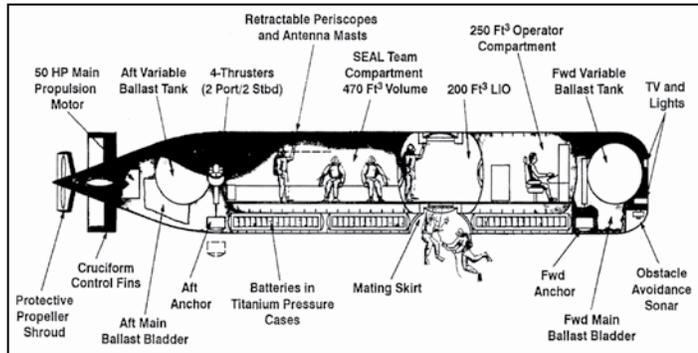
- Length: 39'
- Width: 10'
- Weight: 65,000 lbs
- Volume: 3,705 cubic feet



Dry Deck Shelter on a Submarine Deck

### Advanced SEAL Delivery System (ASDS)

The 65-foot ASDS is a dry, 1 ATM, mini-submersible that can transport a SEAL squad from a host platform, either surface ship or submarine, to an objective area. The ASDS has a lockout chamber that is controlled by operators for lockout from an anchored position. The ASDS will anchor above the bottom. The ASDS is transportable by land, sea, or C-5/17 aircraft.



Advanced SEAL Delivery System (ASDS)

**ASDS Design Characteristics:**

- Length: 65'
- Beam: 6.75'
- Height: 8.25'
- Displacement: 55 tons
- Propulsion: 7hp electric motor



An ASDS rides attached to the top of the much larger Los Angeles Class submarine USS Greenville. The ASDS is connected to the host ship via a watertight hatch. U.S. Navy photo.

# Chapter 5. U.S. Air Force Special Operations Forces

## Air Force Special Operations Command (AFSOC)

**A**FSOC manages all USAF special operations. AFSOC is an Air Force major command and constitutes the air component of USSOCOM. AFSOC is organized into two active-duty wings, a numbered air force, one reserve wing, one national guard wing, two active-duty overseas groups, one active-duty group (special tactics), and several direct

reporting units. AFSOC forces are apportioned and assigned by the Joint Chiefs of Staff to USSOCOM and geographic combatant commanders. CONUS-based forces are under OPCON of AFSOC, while the theater SOCs exercise OPCON of assigned or OCONUS assets. Only PACOM and EUCOM have theater-assigned AFSOC forces.

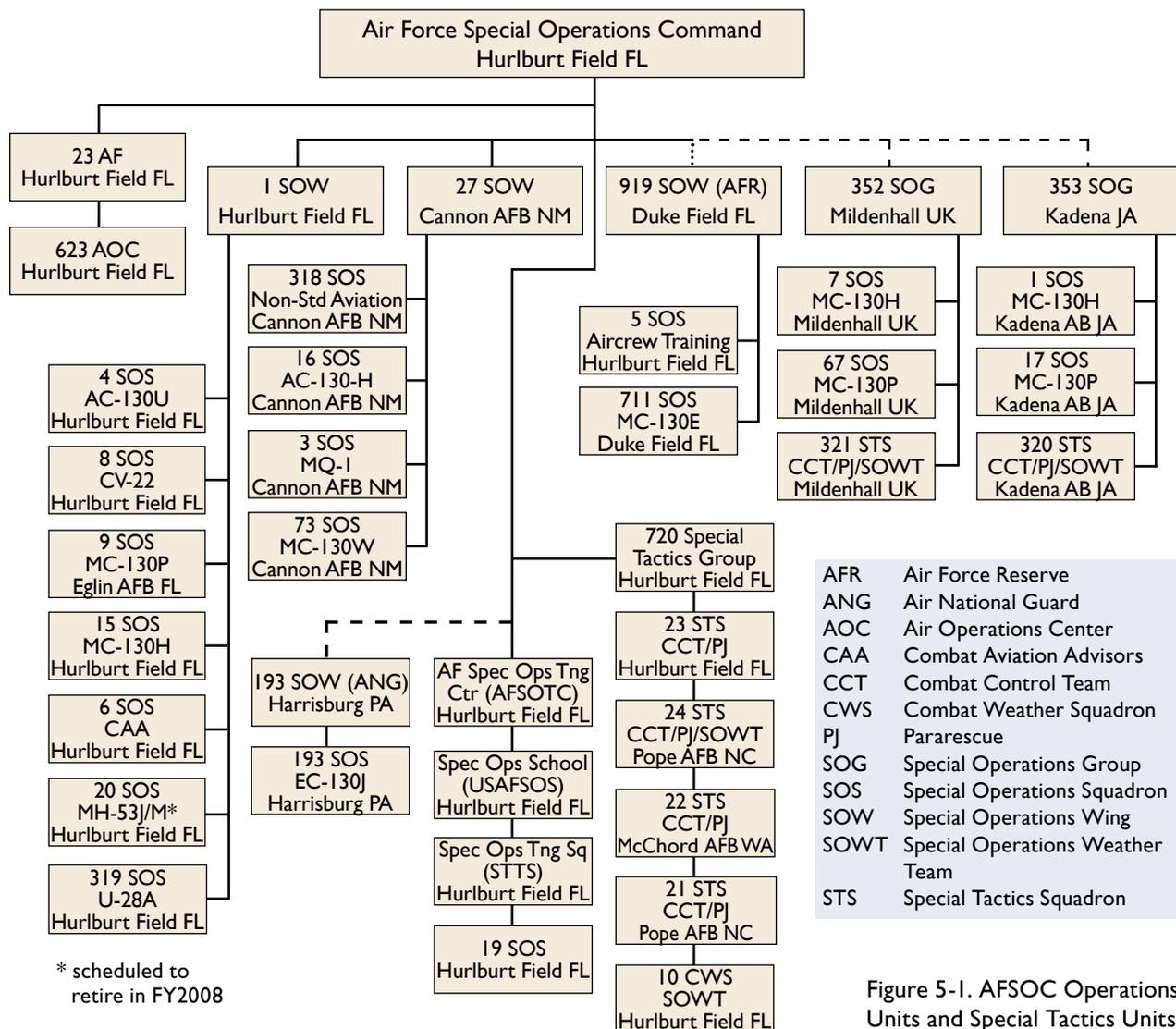


Figure 5-1. AFSOC Operations Units and Special Tactics Units

## AFSOC Mission

AFSOC is America's specialized air power. It is a step ahead in a changing world, delivering special operations combat power anytime, anywhere. The command is committed to continual improvement to provide Air Force special operations forces for worldwide deployment and assignment to regional unified commands, conducting and supporting the full spectrum of Special Operations.

## AFSOC Employment

Air Force SOF consist of uniquely equipped aircraft operated by highly trained aircrews whose missions include insertion, extraction, resupply, aerial fire support, refueling, combat search and rescue, PSYOP, and intra-theater airlift in small and medium aircraft. SOF missions also include unmanned aerial vehicle (UAV) armed reconnaissance, airborne surveillance, and target acquisition.

For infiltration missions, vertical-lift aircraft are normally preferred over airdrop to minimize injuries and reassembly problems. Air refueling of AFSOC vertical-lift aircraft may be necessary to extend range and minimize the security and logistics problems associated with forward area ground refueling.

## Threats

AFSOC's primary method of dealing with the threat is to use *detection avoidance navigation*, *threat avoidance navigation* (DANTAN). Low-level operations and the cover of night are primary employment concepts used to avoid detection and threats. Extensive planning to avoid enemy radar, air defenses, and populated areas is required. Minimum lighting/lights out, communications out/radio discipline, low probability of intercept/detection (LPI/D) radios, and deceptive course changes are also used to achieve mission objectives. AFSOC uses passive warning systems and procedures to assist in avoiding detection and threats, and countermeasures and evasive maneuvering when engaged.

## Capabilities

AFSOC crews and aircraft can conduct clandestine penetration of hostile, sensitive, or politically denied airspace. They can navigate precisely along planned routes to points or targets within narrow time parameters, in conditions of minimum visibility (darkness and/or adverse weather). Fixed-wing aircraft used for airland operations can use minimum length, unimproved landing strips. Terrain following and terrain avoidance systems and procedures are employed. AFSOC's capabilities include:

- a. Clandestine or covert penetration of hostile, sensitive, or politically-denied airspace
- b. Infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply using airland, airdrop, and alternate insertion and extraction (AIE) methods
- c. Organic tanker air refueling of vertical lift platforms
- d. Strategic tanker inflight refueling of organic fixed-wing aircraft
- e. Precision munitions employment against static and moving targets
- f. Electronic broadcasting for PSYOP in standard AM/FM radio, television, short wave, and military communications frequency bands. In addition, select SOF aircraft may be employed in PSYOP roles supporting either special or conventional operations
- g. Controlling air traffic, establishing air assault landing zones, directing close air support for strike aircraft and gunship missions, making weather observations, supporting personnel recovery, and providing advanced trauma care
- h. Advising, training, or assisting foreign nation air forces to support U.S. and coalition interests in support of host nation internal defense and development strategy
- i. Provide command and control for special operations.

### *Planning Considerations*

Mission planning for penetration and overflight of hostile territory must be thorough and complete. Detailed planning includes terrain, weather, cultural features, population, and air and ground enemy air defenses. OPSEC and COMSEC are imperative for both mission planning and execution.

Mission planning support requirements are usually extensive. All joint SO activities must be closely coordinated. Mission tasking details must be provided sufficiently in advance to allow adequate mission planning time. During tactical airdrop operations, air commanders are responsible for air safety, and ground commanders are responsible for ground safety. Close coordination is required to ensure understanding and consensus on the concept of operations. Tactical deception must be considered during planning for all special operations missions.

Inherent operational limitations of most SOF normally precludes rapid commitment to support conventional military operations. Planners must be familiar with the limitations defined in the appropriate technical manuals/orders and volumes of AFTTP 3-1 (S) for AFSOC aircraft. AFSoF operate most effectively in particular environments and under specific methods of employment. As a general rule, AFSoF become less effective when employed outside their intended operational environments. For example, infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply aircraft may be less effective in conditions other than darkness and adverse weather. General limitations that apply to all AFSoF may include:

- a. Limited self-deployment and sustainment capability
- b. Dependence on established support and logistics packages that must accompany employment aircraft
- c. Technological sophistication of most AFSoF resources affects bed-down requirements, bare base operations, and requires extensive maintenance support
- d. Long-range deployment and employment require inflight refueling (strategic) and air refueling (AFSOC tanker, vertical-lift receiver)
- e. Limited air-to-air defensive capabilities.

### *Air Force Special Operations Training Center (AFSOTC)*

AFSOTC was established as a provisional group in February 2008 with an expected stand-up in fall 2008. AFSOTC's mission is to recruit, assess, select, indoctrinate, and train AFSOC personnel. The Training Center will build on the success of other component programs, consolidate disparate training programs, and relieve the training stress on operational units by providing them "finished products" from the training pipeline.

AFSOTC will begin with a solid base of established units consisting of the United States Air Force Special Operations School (USAFSOS), the 19th Special Operations Squadron (19 SOS), and the Special Tactics Training Squadron (STTS), all located at Hurlburt Field, Florida.

- a. USAFSOS will provide the necessary special operations-related education and language training.
- b. The 19 SOS provides mission training for multiple SOF aircraft. It is the Air Force's most advanced weapons instruction and mission rehearsal unit, providing innovative solutions across the full spectrum of joint combat and contingency training and mission preview/rehearsal requirements. The 19 SOS will also provide combat aviation advisor (CAA) training to develop Air Commandos who are language proficient, regionally-oriented, politically astute, and culturally aware aviation advisory experts.
- c. The STTS includes Advanced Skills Training (AST), the Special Operations Terminal Attack Controller's Course, and Deployed Aircraft Ground Response Element (DAGRE) training. AST teaches special tactics skill-sets to battlefield airmen: combat controller (CCT), pararescue (PJ), and special operations weather team (SOWT) personnel.

AFSOTC is scheduled to add a unit at Cannon AFB, New Mexico, to conduct AC-130H, non-standard aviation (NSA), and MC-130W mission training. EC-130J mission training conducted at Harrisburg IAP, Pennsylvania will also fall under AFSOTC.

## Aircraft And Unique Unit Summary

### *MC-130E Combat Talon I, MC-130H Combat Talon II, and MC-130W Combat Spear*

Combat Talon and Combat Spear support a range of activities from crisis response to wartime commitment in special operations missions. These missions include day and night infiltration, exfiltration, resupply, PSYOP, and aerial reconnaissance in hostile territory using airland or airdrop procedures. Combat Talons/Spears are capable of inflight refueling, giving them extended range. They are capable of air refueling specially modified helicopters for extended operations. Combat Talon/Spear missions may be accomplished either single-ship or in concert with other SO assets in varying multi-aircraft scenarios. Combat Talons/Spears can airland and airdrop personnel and equipment on austere, marked, and unmarked landing/drop zones, day or night, in adverse weather. These aircraft can conduct overt, clandestine, and low-visibility operations. They can be employed in a low to medium threat environment as defined in AFTTP 3-1, Vol 33 (S).

### *AC-130H Spectre and AC-130U Spooky*

The AC-130 is a C-130 modified with gun systems, electronic and electro-optical sensors, fire control systems, enhanced navigation systems, sophisticated communications, defensive systems, and inflight refueling capability. Additionally, the AC-130 can receive Predator UAV video to find and fix targets, allowing the AC-130 to “stand off” in a safer environment until the target is identified by the Predator. These systems give the gunship crew the capability to acquire and identify targets day or night, coordinate with ground forces and command and control agencies, and deliver surgically precise firepower in support of both conventional and special operations missions. The gunship is best suited for the close air support (CAS) mission and has a unique capability to deliver ordnance in extremely close proximity to friendly forces in a troops-in-contact (TIC) situation. Gunships can also perform interdiction and armed reconnaissance missions, particularly where

limited collateral damage is required. The gunship can be employed in low to medium threat environments as defined by AFTTP 3-1, Vol 31 (S).

### *MC-130P Combat Shadow*

The Combat Shadow aircraft is required to support a range of activities from crisis response to wartime commitment in special operations (SO) missions. The mission of the Combat Shadow is clandestine formation or single-ship intrusion of hostile territory to provide air refueling of special operations helicopters and the infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply of special operations forces by airdrop or airland operations. To perform these missions, the primary emphasis is on NVG operations. The Combat Shadow can be employed in a low to medium threat environment as defined in AFTTP 3-1, Vol 33 (S).

### *MH-53J/M Pave Low III*

*(scheduled for retirement in FY 2008)*

The primary mission of the MH-53J/MH-53M is to conduct clandestine infiltration, exfiltration, resupply, airdrop, and heavy-lift sling operations over a wide range of environmental conditions. The aircraft can perform a variety of other missions, including shipboard operations, radar vectoring, and combat rescue. The Pave Low can be employed in low to medium threat environments as defined by AFTTP 3-1, Vol 34.

### *EC-130J (Commando Solo)*

Commando Solo is an airborne electronic broadcasting system. The 193 SOW, Pennsylvania Air National Guard, based at Harrisburg International Airport, Middletown, Pennsylvania, operates the EC130J Commando Solo aircraft. Its mission is to conduct PSYOP broadcasting in frequency spectrums including the standard AM/FM radio, television, short-wave, and military communications bands. This system may also be used to:

- a. Support disaster assistance efforts by broadcasting public information and instruction for evacuation operations
- b. Provide a temporary replacement for existing transmitters or expand their areas of coverage
- c. Meet other requirements that involve radio and television broadcasting in its frequency range.

### *CV-22 Osprey*

The CV-22 Osprey is a tilt-rotor platform that overcomes many limitations of AFSOC's aging helicopter fleet. The CV-22 can self-deploy immediately to the area of operations eliminating dependence on strategic airlift and additional time to tear down and build up vertical lift assets. It has a vertical takeoff and landing (VTOL) capability, speed comparable to an MC-130, double the unrefueled range of an MH-53M, and requires less aerial refueling tanker support than existing SOF helicopters. The CV-22 also has improved survivability, reliability, maintainability, and reduced weapon system support force structure. The CV-22 is designed for penetrating denied airspace and conducting infiltration, personnel recovery, exfiltration, and resupply missions.

The planned force structure for the CV-22 is 50 aircraft. The first operational CV-22 was delivered to Hurlburt Field in January 2006, and complete delivery is scheduled for FY 2017.

### *MQ-1 Predator*

The MQ-1 Predator, flown by the 3rd Special Operations Squadron, is a medium-altitude, long-endurance, remotely piloted aircraft with associated personnel and equipment. The MQ-1's primary mission is interdiction and armed reconnaissance against critical, perishable targets

### *MQ-9 Reaper*

The MQ-9 Reaper is a medium-to-high altitude, long-endurance, remotely piloted aircraft. The

MQ-9's primary mission is as a persistent hunter-killer against emerging targets. The MQ-9's alternate mission is as an intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance asset, with sensors to provide real-time data.

### *The 6th Special Operations Squadron (SOS)*

The 6 SOS is AFSOC's aviation combat advisory unit. Its members provide U.S. military expertise to foreign country governments worldwide, supporting U.S. and coalition interests in support of HN internal defense and development (IDAD) efforts.

### *Special Tactics (ST)*

The 720 Special Tactics Group (STG) comprises Air Force Combat Control, Pararescue, and Special Operations Weather personnel capable of providing terminal control, reconnaissance, and recovery. Special Tactics core competencies include austere airfield control; environmental reconnaissance/objective area weather forecasting; terminal attack control/fire support operations; personnel rescue and recovery; battlefield trauma care; and assault zone assessment, establishment, and control. In addition, the 720 STG includes specialized support in the fields of intelligence, life support, logistics, weapons, supply, medical logistics, vehicle maintenance, and radio maintenance. These are highly skilled individuals who are technical experts and worldwide deployable to support any type of contingency across the spectrum.

### *USAF Special Operations School (USAFSOS)*

USAFSOS provides special operations-related education to personnel from all branches of DoD, governmental agencies, and allied nations. Subjects covered include SOF indoctrination, regional orientation, cross cultural communication, force protection, antiterrorism, SOF command and control, counterinsurgency, influence operations, PSYOP, and SOF space applications.

### ***Augmenting USAF Forces***

Although not core AFSOF, certain conventional forces are specially trained, equipped, and organized to conduct missions in support of SO. This support is provided on a non-dedicated, mission-specific basis. These forces do not conduct unilateral SO activities, but provide specific requirements supporting AFSOF.

Depending upon the mission, the President, SecDef, or geographic combatant commander may allocate any DoD assets to support SO, depending upon the capabilities required. This support is usually mission-specific and of short duration. Such capabilities may include strategic or tactical bombing or airlift, airborne warning and control, electronic warfare, reconnaissance, deception, or space-based support.

#### ***Special Operations Low-Level (SOLL)***

Basic fixed-wing strategic and theater (tactical) airlift forces that can quickly augment AFSOF for the conduct and support of selected SO as the result of special aircrew training and/or aircraft modification.

### ***Strategic tankers***

USAF maintains a limited number of strategic tanker crews trained to support the unique refueling requirements of AFSOF fixed-wing aircraft.

#### ***A-10s***

A-10s may support SOF operations to provide AFSOC with a hard kill and Anti-Aircraft Artillery (AAA) suppression capability.

#### ***17th Air Support Operations Squadron (ASOS), Fort Benning, Georgia***

17 ASOS is tasked with supporting the Ranger Regiment as well as having Special Operations Tactical Air Control Party (SOF TACP) support of USA-SOC's 1st, 3rd, 5th, 7th, 10th Special Forces Groups, and the John F. Kennedy Special Warfare Center and School. 17 ASOS advises the ground commander on the capabilities and use of tactical air power and assists the ground commander on the planning and employment of tactical air support. SOF TACPs also provide the communications link with the Theater Air Control System, conduct emergency CAS/terminal guidance operations and training, and provide CAS control for exercises and contingencies.

## AFSOC Numbered Air Force

### *23rd Air Force, Air Force Special Operations Forces*

The 23rd Air Force, at Hurlburt Field, Florida, was activated in January 2008 to provide worldwide Air Force special operations command and control support to combatant commanders.

The mission of the 23 AF is to provide highly trained special operations command and control, intelligence, and reachback support forces to deployed air commanders for execution of assigned missions. Specific tasks include mobilizing and deploying AFSOC units, personnel and equipment; providing reachback support for deployed AFSOC units; performing C2 for AFSOC forces above the wing level; accomplishing global force management and synchronization for AFSOC forces and prioritizing warfighter requirements.

The 623rd Air and Space Operations Center, the 18th Flight Test Squadron, and the 11th Intelligence Squadron fall under the 23 AF.

### *623rd Air Operations Center (623 AOC)*

The 623 AOC, at Hurlburt Field, Florida, provides command and control capability of assigned air assets for USSOCOM and other combatant commands as directed. The AOC ensures organized, trained, and equipped capabilities for effective operational-level C2 and ensures SOF are integrated with conventional, joint, and combined forces.

At full operational capability, the 623 AOC will have deployable liaison elements, deployable

joint special operations air component core and/or augmentation packages, and additional reserve component C2 capabilities.

### *18th Flight Test Squadron (18 FLTS)*

The 18 FLTS is AFSOC's independent field test agency. It evaluates aircraft, equipment and tactics in realistic battlespace environments to provide decision makers accurate, timely, and complete assessments of mission capability. From concept development to system fielding, the 18th's mission improves the survivability and combat capability of special operations forces worldwide.

### *11th Intelligence Squadron*

The 11th Intelligence Squadron is USSOCOM and AFSOC's only dedicated processing, exploitation, and dissemination (PED) node for intelligence, surveillance, and reconnaissance (ISR). The squadron provides primary exploitation of full-motion video from theater airborne ISR and all-source fusion in direct support of special operations mission customers as directed by the 623d Air Operations Center, with all PED support tailored to the exacting needs of USSOCOM's tactical users. Further, the squadron trains and deploys an Expeditionary Intelligence Squadron to fulfill ISR tactical coordinator taskings, embedding squadron members directly with operational SOF teams in the field. Finally, the squadron develops TTPs for PED support of SOF.

## AFSOC Wings and Groups

### 1st Special Operations Wing (1 SOW)

The 1 SOW is located at Hurlburt Field, Florida, and is the oldest and most seasoned unit in AFSOC.



#### Mission

The 1 SOW mission is to organize, train, and equip Air Force special operations forces for global employment. The 1 SOW focuses on unconventional warfare, including counterinsurgency and PSYOP during operations other than war.

#### Organization

The 1 SOW is AFSOC's largest unit. It deploys with specially trained and equipped forces from each service, working as a team to support national security objectives. The 1 SOW manages a fleet of more than 90 aircraft with a military and civilian work force of nearly 10,000 people. It includes the units depicted in Figure 5-1.

### 27th Special Operations Wing (27 SOW)

AFSOC recently stood up a second wing, located at Cannon AFB, New Mexico. It includes the units depicted in Figure 5-1.



#### Mission

The 27 SOW mission is to plan and execute specialized and contingency operations using advanced aircraft, tactics, and air refueling techniques to infiltrate, exfiltrate, and resupply SOF and to provide intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance, and CAS in support of SOF operations.

### 352d Special Operations Group (352 SOG)

The 352 SOG at RAF Mildenhall, United Kingdom, is the designated Air Force component for SOCEUR.



#### Mission

The mission of the 352 SOG is to act as the focal point for all USAF special operations activities throughout the European Central Command area of responsibility. The group is prepared to conduct a variety of high priority, low-visibility missions supporting U.S. and allied special operations forces throughout the European theater during peacetime, joint operations exercises, and combat operations. The 352 SOG develops and executes peacetime and wartime contingency plans to effectively use fixed-wing and personnel assets to conduct infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply of U.S. and allied special operations forces.

#### Organization

The 352 SOG is the Air Force component for SOCEUR, a sub-unified command of the U.S. European Command. The 352 SOG has two flying squadrons, a maintenance and tactical communications squadron, and a special tactics squadron. It includes the units depicted in Figure 5-1. All 352 SOG units are based at RAF Mildenhall, England.

### 353d Special Operations Group (353 SOG)

The 353 SOG, with headquarters at Kadena Air Base, Japan, is the Air Force component for SOCPAC.



#### Mission

The group's mission is to act as the focal point for all USAF special operations activities throughout the Pacific. The group is prepared to conduct a variety of high-priority, low-visibility air support missions for joint and allied special operations forces in the region. It maintains a worldwide mobility commitment, participates in theater exercises, and supports humanitarian assistance and disaster relief operations. The group develops wartime and contingency plans to effectively use the full range of fixed wing capabilities, to include infiltration,

exfiltration, and resupply of U.S. and allied special operations forces. The primary peacetime responsibility of the 353 SOG is to oversee the training and maintenance of its assigned units. The group ensures the combat readiness of these units through comprehensive involvement in numerous theater and Joint Chiefs of Staff-directed military exercises and training activities throughout the Pacific.

**Organization**

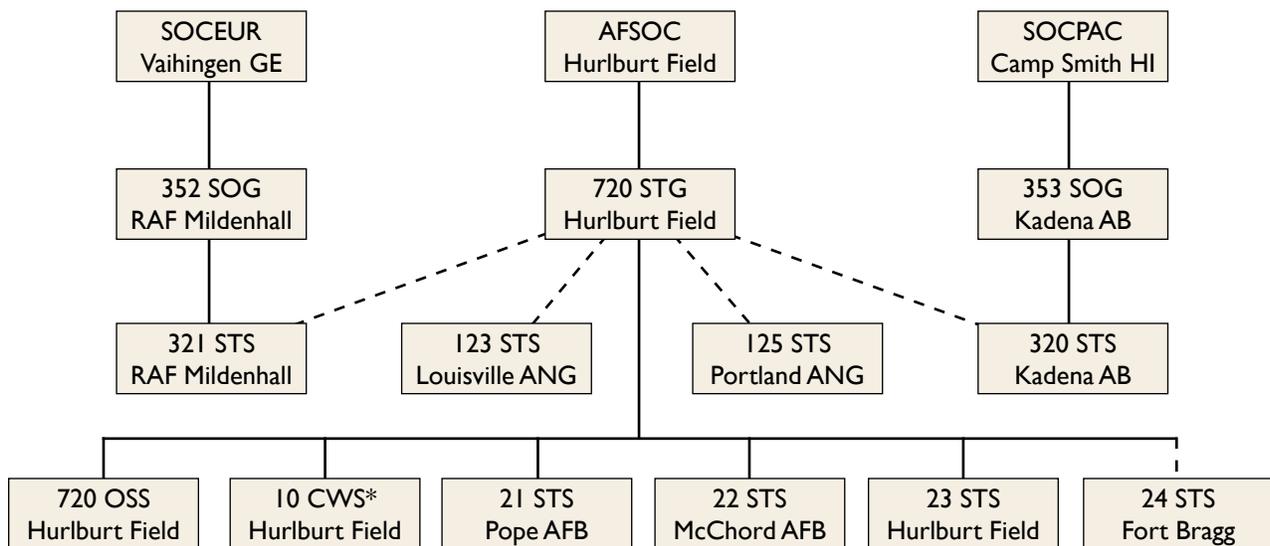
The 353 SOG comprises the USAF special operations air arm in PACOM. The commander is designated Commander, Air Force Special Operations Command, Pacific, which is a sub-unified command to the Special Operations Command, Pacific. The 353 SOG has two flying squadrons, a maintenance and tactical communications squadron, and a special tactics squadron. It includes the units shown in Figure 5-1.

**720th Special Tactics Group (720 STG)**

The 720 STG, with headquarters at Hurlburt Field, Florida, has assigned combat controllers, pararescuemen, and special operations weathermen who work jointly in Special Tactics Teams (STT).



There are six Special Tactics Squadrons (STS), one Combat Weather Squadron (CWS), and one Operations Support Squadron (OSS). The 21 STS is at Pope AFB, North Carolina; the 22 STS is at McChord AFB, Washington; the 23 STS is at Hurlburt Field, Florida, the 24 STS is at Ft Bragg, North Carolina. The 320 STS at Kadena AB, Japan, and the 321 STS at RAF Mildenhall, England, are assigned to and under the operational control of the 353d and 352d SOGs, respectively. The 720 OSS is co-located with 720 STG at Hurlburt Field, and provides mission support and functional guidance for the STG subordinate units. The 10 CWS is also headquartered at Hurlburt Field, but the bulk of its personnel are assigned to detachments co-located with U.S. Army Special Operations Command units.



\* 6 Geographically Separated Units: Ft Bragg, Ft Campbell, Ft Benning, Ft Carson, Ft Lewis, and Hunter AAF

Figure 5-2. Special Tactics Organization

## *Air Reserve and Air National Guard Components*

AFSOC gains three Air Reserve Component units when they are mobilized. One is the 919 SOW (AFRES) at Duke Field, Florida. Its 711 SOS flies the MC 130E Combat Talon I. The second is the 193 SOW (ANG) at Harrisburg International Airport, Pennsylvania, which flies the EC 130J Commando Solo. The third component is the 123/125 Special Tactics Squadrons of the ANG.

### *919th Special Operations Wing (919 SOW) (AFRC)*

The 919 SOW at Duke Field, Florida is the only Air Force Reserve Command special operations wing. When mobilized, it reports to AFSOC. The 919 SOW provides MC 130E Combat Talon I and MQ-1 aircraft operations, maintenance, and support functions to accomplish SO and trains active duty crew members to fly the U-28A. The 919 SOW reports to the Air Force Reserve's 10th Air Force at Carswell AFB, Texas. The 919 SOW has more than 1,400 reservists and full-time civilian employees assigned. It includes the 5 SOS and the 711 SOS.



### *193d Special Operations Wing (193 SOW) (ANG)*

The 193 SOW, Pennsylvania Air National Guard, Harrisburg International Airport, Pa., is the Air Force's sole asset for providing airborne radio and television broadcast missions. This Guard unit falls under AFSOC when mobilized for wartime action, humanitarian efforts or contingencies. The 193 SOW provides an airborne platform for virtually any contingency, including state or national disasters, or other emergencies, on a moment's notice, anywhere in the world. The 193 SOW performs this unique mission with specially configured EC-130J Commando Solo aircraft. Secondary 193 SOW missions are to provide airlift for Air Force Intelligence Agency missions with modified EC-130Js and to provide airborne command and control for special operations.



### *123rd Special Tactics Squadron, Kentucky Air National Guard*

Located at Louisville, Kentucky, the 123rd falls under AFSOC when mobilized for wartime action, humanitarian efforts, or contingencies. The 123rd trains, equips, and employs combat control, para-rescue, special operations weathermen, and support personnel in response to Presidential/SecDef taskings. Their primary task is to integrate, synchronize, and/or control the elements of air and space power in the objective area. The 123rd performs austere airfield control, terminal attack control, personnel rescue and recovery, assault zone assessment, battlefield trauma care, direct action, and special reconnaissance.

### *125th Special tactics Squadron, Oregon Air National Guard*

Located at Portland, Oregon, the 125th falls under AFSOC when mobilized for wartime action, humanitarian efforts or contingencies. The 125th trains, equips and employs combat control and support personnel in response to Presidential/SecDef taskings. Their primary task is to integrate, synchronize, and/or control the elements of air and space power in the objective area. The 123rd performs austere airfield control, terminal attack control, personnel rescue and recovery, assault zone assessment, direct action, and special reconnaissance.

## *Air Force Special Operations Forces Logistics*

AFSOF logistics is primarily focused on creating, preparing, deploying, employing, sustaining, and protecting the specialized air operations mission through the full range of military operations. Logistics and maintenance emphasize the launch, recovery, service, rapid repair, and re-launch cycle. The turn-around cycle may be compressed into relatively short periods of 12 hours or less. This places a significant burden on the logistics infrastructure, given the level of sophistication of SOF aircraft modifications and the requirement to operate from austere locations. Additionally, AFSOF logistics may be required to provide initial contingency base operating support in support of special operations.

The parent organizations—wing, group and/or squadron—are responsible for determining

equipment, spares, and personnel requirements. Total requirements determination will be based on the deployment duration and the extent of existing logistics and base operating support at the deployed location. Once deployed, the AFSOF logistics readiness officer will manage and coordinate logistics support, including but not limited to supply and contracting support, communications, vehicle, fuels, billeting, and messing requirements, and will establish connectivity with the theater and CONUS logistic support systems.

Should time permit prior to deployment, the wing or group logistic planning cell will develop a plan to support deployed air operations and concomitant logistics objectives. AFSOC units normally tailor their contingency support packages to accommodate the mission options for self-deployment, limited airlift deployments, and, when applicable, shipboard operations. Employment of 30 days or less normally will be supported by mobility readiness spares packages and limited base operating support. Intermediate level maintenance support may be deployed to collocate with AFSOF or be centrally located to support SOF as well as theater operations. While AFSOC units are en route or at an austere location, the AFSOF Logistics Readiness Center (LRC) is the primary supply support medium for non-mission-capable supply (NMCS) spares requests and orchestrates the acquisition-to-delivery process. Long-term employments will be supported by established supply pipelines with the exception of NMCS conditions which will be accomplished by the LRC. SOF-unique requests may go through the JSOTF/SOC J-4 to USSOCOM Special Operations Acquisition and Logistics Center (J4) or directly to SOFSA.

From an Air Force logistics perspective, support squadrons are organic to the 1 SOW, the 27 SOW and the two OCONUS SOGs. They deploy, in part, whenever elements of the parent wing or group deploy. The 16th Maintenance and Mission Support Groups, comprised of qualified personnel from a composite of support squadrons, provide the primary logistics support for CONUS-based AFSOF. The OCONUS Special Operations Groups provide the primary logistic support of OCONUS-based AFSOF. They

accomplish their mission by meeting the following key objectives: maintaining personnel, equipment and supplies in constant state of deployment and combat readiness; providing world class training to logistics and maintenance personnel; and striving for technological superiority, robustness, agility, and full integration with joint operations.

### *New AFSOC Units*

#### *3rd Special Operations Squadron (3 SOS)*

The 3 SOS is located at Creech AFB, Nevada. It is currently geographically separated from its parent wing, the 27th SOW, but will be conducting a unit move to Cannon AFB, New Mexico, in FY2009.



#### *Mission*

The SOS mission is to provide UAV support to special operations forces.

#### *Organization*

To accomplish the mission, the 3 SOS uses the MQ-1 Predator unmanned aerial vehicle. The MQ-1 Predator is a medium-altitude, long-endurance, remotely piloted aircraft.

#### *319th Special Operations Squadron (319 SOS)*

The 319 SOS is located at Hurlburt Field, Florida.

#### *Mission*

The 319 SOS mission is to provide intra-theater support for special operations forces.



#### *Organization*

To accomplish its mission, the 319 SOS uses the U-28A, a variation of the Pilatus PC-12. The U-28A has a crew of two, but can be flown by one pilot. The plane was selected for its versatile performance and ability to operate from short and unimproved runways. It is certified to land on dirt and grass strips, and is equipped with weather radar, a suite of advanced communications, and navigation gear.

### *318th Special Operations Squadron (318 SOS)*

The 318 SOS is located at Cannon AFB, New Mexico.

#### *Mission*

The 318 SOS mission is to provide intra-theater airlift support for special operations forces.



#### *Organization*

The 318 SOS will provide battlefield mobility in a variety of light and medium aircraft, known as Non-Standard Aviation.

## AFSOC Aircraft and Capabilities

### MC-130E Combat Talon I/MC-130H Combat Talon II

Combat Talon aircraft are equipped with inflight refueling equipment, terrain-following, terrain-avoidance radar, an inertial and GPS navigation system, and a high-speed aerial delivery system. Combat Talon I and some Talon II aircraft are also equipped with air refueling systems to refuel vertical-lift assets.

#### Mission

Combat Talon I and Combat Talon II are required to support the range of activities from crisis response to wartime commitment in special operations missions. The mission of the Combat Talon is to provide global, day, night, and adverse weather capability to airdrop and airland personnel and equipment in support of U.S. and allied special operations forces. The Combat Talons conduct infiltration, exfiltration, resupply (using airland and/or airdrop), PSYOP, and aerial reconnaissance in hostile or denied territory. Both Combat Talons are capable of inflight refueling, giving them an extended range, limited only by crew endurance and availability of conventional tanker support. Combat Talon I and some Talon II aircraft

are capable of air refueling vertical-lift aircraft in support of extended operations. The Combat Talon missions may be accomplished either single-ship or in concert with other special operations assets in varying multi-aircraft scenarios. Combat Talons are able to airland/airdrop personnel/equipment on austere, marked and unmarked LZ/DZs, day or night. Combat Talon missions may require overt, clandestine, or low-visibility operations.

#### Equipment

##### General Characteristics and Specifications

Special navigation and aerial delivery systems are used to locate small drop zones and deliver people or equipment with greater accuracy and at higher airspeeds than possible with a standard C-130E/H aircraft. The following equipment has been installed on the standard C-130E/H aircraft to meet Combat Talon mission requirements:

- a. Terrain-Following/Terrain-Avoidance Radar (TF/TA)
- b. Precision Ground Mapping Radar (PGM)
- c. Precision Navigation System (INS, Doppler and GPS)
- d. Automatic Computed Air Release Point System (AUTOCARP)

Table 5-I. MC-130E vs. MC-130H Comparisons

	MC-130E Combat Talon I	MC-130E Combat Talon II
Primary Function	Infiltration, exfiltration, resupply of SOF, aerial refueling of specially equipped helicopters	Infiltration, exfiltration, resupply of SOF
Builder	Lockheed Aircraft Corp	Lockheed Aircraft Corp
Power Plant	Four Allison T-56-A-15 turboprop engines	Four Allison T-56-A-15 turboprop engines
Thrust	4,910 shaft horsepower, each engine	4,910 shaft horsepower, each engine
Length	100 ft, 6 in (30.7 m)	99 ft, 9 in (30.4 m)
Height	38 ft, 6 in (11.7 m)	38 ft, 6 in (11.7 m)
Wingspan	132 ft, 7 in (40.4 m)	132 ft, 7 in (40.4 m)
Speed	300 mph (480 kph)	300 mph (480 kph)
Ceiling	33,000 ft (10,000 m)	33,000 ft (10,000 m)
Load	59 troops or 32 paratroopers	75 troops or 50 paratroopers
Max Takeoff Weight	155,000 lbs (69,750 kg), 175,000 lbs with waiver	155,000 lbs (69,750 kg), 175,000 lbs with waiver
Range	3,110 miles (2,700 nm), unlimited with air refueling	3,110 miles (2,700 nm), unlimited with air refueling
Crew	5 officers (2 pilots, 2 navigators, 1 EWO), 4 enlisted (1 flight engineer, 1 comm specialist, 2 loadmasters)	4 officers (2 pilots, 1 navigator, 1 EWO), 3 enlisted (1 flight engineer, 2 loadmasters)
Fuel	JP-8	JP-8



MC-130E Combat Talon I

- e. Electronic Countermeasures (ECM)
- f. Infrared Countermeasures (IRCM)
- g. High Speed Low-Level Aerial Delivery System (HSSLADS)
- h. Container Release System (CRS)
- i. Inflight refueling, receiver operations
- j. Secure voice HF, UHF, VHF-FM, and SATCOM radios
- k. Infrared sensor
- l. Helicopter refueling systems

### Employment

See table 5-2.

### General Planning Factors

**Altitude profile.** Combat Talon missions are normally flown at night using a high-low-high altitude profile. The high altitude portions are generally flown prior to penetrating and after exiting the target area. These portions of the flight are flown at an average ground speed of 260 knots and at an altitude that minimizes fuel consumption and enemy detection. The aircraft will descend to low-level, terrain-following altitudes to penetrate hostile territory. The highest altitude commensurate with detection/threat avoidance and mission requirements is normally flown. Mission success may require the flight to be conducted at the lowest possible altitude consistent with flying safety and at a ground speed between 220 and 260 knots. NVGs may be used. The Combat Talons operate in a low to medium threat as defined in AFTTP 3-1.

**Range.** Aircraft range depends upon several factors, including configuration, payload, length of time spent

low level, en route winds, and weather. For planning purposes, range (without refueling, 2 hours low level) is 2300 NM. Crew limitations and availability of tanker support are the only limitations on range of aircraft with inflight refueling capability. Load capabilities depend on aircraft configuration, fuel load, and operating altitude.

**Duration.** Mission duration will depend on the aircraft basing location, aircraft configuration, crew composition, target location, availability of tanker support, and routing required for successful mission accomplishment.

**Crew.** Crew duty day varies for basic crews and augmented crews. Crew compositions are as follows:

- a. Basic
  - 1 Aircraft Commander
  - 1 Copilot
  - 2 Navigators (1 MC-130H)
  - 1 Flight Engineer
  - 1 Radio Operator (None MC-130H)
  - 2 Loadmasters
  - 1 Electronic Warfare Officer
- b. Augmented
  - 2 Aircraft Commanders
  - 1 Copilot
  - 3 Navigators (2 MC-130H)
  - 1 Flight Engineer
  - 2 Radio Operators (None MC-130H)
  - 2 Loadmasters
  - 2 Electronic Warfare Officers

#### Notes

1. Duty day for a basic mission crew is 16 hours, providing no tactical events are accomplished after 12 hours and no air refueling is accomplished after 14 hours.
2. Duty day for an augmented mission crew is 20 hours, providing no tactical events are accomplished after 16 hours and no air refueling is accomplished after 18 hours.

**Response time.** The Combat Talon is not a rapid response force. Missions deep into heavily defended enemy territory require extensive preflight planning. Therefore, exercise/contingency operations require at least 72 hours notification prior to mission execution.

Table 5-2. MC-130E/H Employment Methods

Method	Type	Comments
Infiltration and Exfiltration	Static line low altitude airdrops	Flown at 130 knots at 800 (min) AGL. Static line drops can also be accomplished in combination with CRS. For combination drops, troops exit from the ramp immediately after ejection of equipment from the ramp.
	High Altitude Low Opening (HALO) / High Altitude High Opening (HAHO)	Made above 3000 ft. The navigator determines the High Altitude Release Point (HARP). HAHO airdrops are normally made above 10,000-ft AGL, without free-fall, to travel long distances. HALO and HALO are flown at 130 kts indicated airspeed.
	Airland Infiltration/Exfiltration	For training operations, LZ should be hard surfaced. Extreme caution must be used in coordinating these events at non-active-duty military installations. Min runway length is takeoff/landing roll + 500 ft (approx. 3,000 ft). Min runway width is 60 ft. NVG operations require a runway at least 3500 ft by 60 ft. Permission must be received from the airport manager and weight-bearing capacity must be adequate. Compatible fire-fighting equipment must be immediately available if multiple landings are planned. See AFI 13-217 and AFSOCI 11-202 for training and contingency runway length.
	Combat Rubber Raiding Craft (CRRC)	Airdropped using low-level procedures (800-ft AGL min). 19 parachutists can be airdropped in conjunction with 1 CRRC or 18 parachutists with 2 CRRCs. 3-4 CRRCs may be airdropped on a single pass when stacked and rigged IAW Army FM 10-542/ AFTO 13C7-51-21.
Resupply	High Speed Low Level Delivery System (HSSLADS)	Primary method of low-level (250-ft AGL min) resupply because it minimizes risks and avoids compromise of the DZ. Air drop is accomplished at a max airspeed of 250 kts. AUTOCARP or special sight procedures (marked point of impact) will be used to determine release point. High-speed containers must weigh between 250-600 lbs each. 4 containers may be dropped on a single pass, providing the total weight does not exceed 2,200 lbs.
	Heavy Equipment Platform Airdrop	Primary method for airdrop of heavy-weight supplies. This is a low-level (800-ft AGL), low-speed (130 kts) item-extraction-type drop of platforms assembled in lengths of 8–32 ft in increments of 4 feet. Combination airdrops may be accomplished utilizing the aircraft ramp after the load exits. A max of 20 personnel may exit when using parachutes rigged with static lines. Max weight of 42,000 lbs may be airdropped on a single pass.
	Container Release System (CRS)	Used for low-level (min 500 ft AGL), low-speed (130 kts) gravity drops. Used to airdrop A-series containers. A total weight not to exceed 6,667 lbs may be dropped on a single pass. Combination drops may be accomplished with CRS. Parachutists exit the aircraft from the ramp after the load exits.
	Container Delivery System (CDS)	Used to deliver up to 16 A-series cargo containers by gravity extraction on a single pass. A max weight of 37,248 lbs may be dropped on a single pass. Combination airdrops may be accomplished with CDS. A total of 20 parachutists may be dropped on a single pass.
	Door Bundles	A door bundle is a container weighing less than 500 lbs and released from the paradrop door. Dimensions must be 48x30x66 inches or smaller.
	Ramp Bundles	Ramp bundles are rigged and dropped from the aircraft cargo ramp. They are rigged in A-series containers on a skid board at least 42 in wide. Max container height is 83 in. Loads followed by a parachutist must be rigged breakaway, unless specifically authorized in a specific rigging manual.
PSYOP		PSYOP are conducted through leaflet drops. Psychological warfare units supply the necessary information, leaflets, and other materials as needed.
Aerial Reconnaissance		Some aircrews are trained to conduct visual reconnaissance. A portable camera system may be mounted on the MC-130 to provide a limited daylight photo capability for use in a low-threat environment. A portable video recorder can also record FLIR images providing a limited night photo capability.

**Drop missions.** Combat Talon aircrews accomplish drops on drop zones with no markings or communications. If commanders agree to use marked drop zones, reception committee personnel must fully coordinate with the aircrew on the type of markings to be used, configuration of the drop zone, method of authentication, and release point determination. The most frequent cause of mission abort is lack of coordination or confusion over correct marking procedures. Placement and markings types are outlined in TC 31-20-3, AFM 3-5, SOCOMM 350-3, and AFI 13-217.

Inaccuracies in DZ coordinates, lack of radar update targets, and a non-operational INS will degrade the accuracy of airdrops accomplished using onboard navigational equipment (AUTOCARP).

**Mission scenario.** Not all aircrew members are qualified in all employment events. Also, the aircraft can be configured for several different employment events or combinations of events. Therefore, the employment scenario must be known prior to deployment to determine crew and aircraft mission configuration/equipment requirements. Crew qualifications for specific missions are shown in Table 5-3.

**Terrain following.** Terrain-following will be degraded during moderate to heavy showers/thunderstorms.

Table 5-3. Combat Talon Aircrew Qualification

Mission	Crew Qualification
Airdrop	All crews.
NVG Landing	NVG left-seat pilot, NVG right-seat pilot, flight engineer
Inflight Refueling	Aircraft commander, navigator, flight engineer
Helicopter Refueling	Aircraft commander, navigator, flight engineer, one or two loadmasters — not required for Combat Talon II
Forward Arming Refueling Point (FARP)	All Crews

**Waivers.** Commonly requested operational waivers are:

- a. Crew duty day extension
- b. Takeoff gross weight
- c. Minimum runway criteria
- d. IMC self-contained approaches (SCA)
- e. HAR below 1000 feet.

**Employment/Navigation and Drop Capabilities.** Navigation to a computed air release point (CARP) for airdrops is accomplished by one of the procedures shown in Table 5-4.

Table 5-4. Combat Talon Drop Capabilities

Method	Procedure
Manual CARP	Navigator manually computes release point using parachute ballistic data and winds, and visually directs the pilot to the point. DZ point of impact or release point must be marked.
AUTOCARP	Mission computer calculates the release point and provides steering direction to pilot through the flight director system. At the release point, the computer automatically releases the load. Accuracy of the drop is improved if a radar target is located within 5 nm of the DZ or if a GAR/I beacon is positioned on the point of impact (or other precoordinated offset position). Because the GAR/I transmit and receives line-of-sight, an unobstructed beacon alignment is required. The GAR/I should be turned on 10 minutes before scheduled target time.
Ground-marked Release System	Ground forces compute the release point and provide a ground marker. The release point will be over the ground marker or offset 50 meters to the right for an "inverted L" (other letters may be used if precoordinated).
Area DZ	Prearranged flight track over a series of acceptable drop zones (1/2 mile either side of track) established in a line-of-flight between two points more than 15 miles apart. The ground party is free to receive the drop anywhere along the flight path. Use of the GAR/I and the AUTOCARP IS the preferred method of navigation to the release point because it permits early DZ recognition and course adjustments by the aircrew.
Regular DZ	The location, size, and marking are determined before the mission.
Blind DZ	Airdrop on unmarked DZs using AUTOCARP procedures.

**Load Capabilities for the MC-130E Combat Talon I**

Tables 5-5, 5-6, and 5-7 illustrate maximum aircraft load capabilities for the MC-130E Combat Talon I aircraft. Load capabilities will be reduced if operating in high terrain and/or temperature environments.

**Load Capabilities for the MC-130H Combat Talon II**

Tables 5-8, 5-9, and 5-10 illustrate maximum aircraft load capabilities for the MC-130H Combat Talon II aircraft. Load capabilities will be reduced if operating in high terrain and/or temperature environments.

**Table 5-5. Combat Talon I Load Capabilities for Ground Troop Movement and Personnel Airdrop**

Type	Load – Internal Fulton Equipment Removed
Ground troops (excluding aircrew)	59
Paratroops (including safeties and jumpmaster)	32

**Table 5-6. Combat Talon I Load Capabilities for Equipment Airdrop**

Load	Single-Pass Drop	Total Load
High Speed Low Level Aerial Delivery System (HSSLADS) bundles	4	Restricted to space available & 2,200 lbs.
Container Release System (CRS) bundles. (See Note 1)	Depends on type of container used.	Depends on type of container used. Total weight not to exceed 6,667 lbs.
Door bundles (max size and weight)	Size: 48x30x66 in.; Weight: 500 lbs.	Depends on mission requirements
Combat Rubber Raiding Craft (See Note 2)	2	4
Heavy Equipment Platforms	2, 28 ft total length	2
Container Delivery System	12	12

**Notes:**

1. The CRS bundles can be airdropped from the aircraft ramp. Number, size and weight of bundles is a limiting factor. Max weight for the MC-130 ramp is 5,000 lbs, including the weight of the dual rails (336 lbs), and air deflectors (137 lbs).

2. 3 to 4 CRRCs may be airdropped on a single pass when stacked and rigged for airdrop IAW Army FM 10-542/ Air Force TO 13C7-51-21.

**Table 5-7. Combat Talon I Load Capabilities for Equipment and Personnel (Combination Airdrop)**

Load	Single-Pass Drop	Total Load
CRS bundles / combat equipped paratroops	Depends on type "A" containers/20 paratroops. Total static lines not to exceed 20 on anchor cable.	Depends on type "A" containers and space available.
Door bundles: max size & weight / combat-equipped paratroops (through paratroop doors)	2@500 lbs each and 48x30x66 inch or less / 32 paratroops	2@500 lbs each and 32 paratroops
AHKIO sleds / combat-equipped paratroops	2/26 paratroops	2/26 paratroops
Combat Rubber Raiding Craft or inflated assault boat / paratroops (See Note 3)	2/18 paratroops or 1/19 paratroops (See Note 3)	4/18 paratroops
Heavy Equipment Platforms / paratroops	2 platforms / 20 paratroops	2 platforms / 20 paratroops
Container Delivery System / paratroops	12 containers / 8 paratroops	12 containers / 8 paratroops

**Notes:**

1. Number and size of equipment items may affect number of paratroops.

2. There is no combination airdrop capability with HSSLADS.

3. HSSLADS CRS loads may be positioned while airborne for multiple DZs.

4. 3 to 4 CRRCs may be airdropped on a single pass when stacked and rigged for airdrop IAW Army FM 10-542/ Air Force TO 13C7-51-21



MC-130H Combat Talon II

Table 5-8. Combat Talon II Load Capabilities for Ground Troop or Personnel Airdrop

Type	Load
Ground troops (excluding aircrew)	75
Paratroops (including safeties and jumpmaster)	50

Table 5-9. Combat Talon II Load Capabilities for Equipment Airdrop

Load	Single-Pass Drop	Total Load
High Speed Low Level Aerial Delivery System (HSLADS) bundles	Single bundle up to 600 lbs & multiple bundles on a single pass up to 2,200 lbs.	Multiple bundles up to 2,200 lbs
Container Release System (CRS) bundles. (See Note 1)	Depends on type of container used; multiple bundles up to 6,667 lbs	Depends on type of container used; multiple bundles up to 6,667 lbs
Door bundles (max size and weight)	Multiple bundles, weight restricted to 500 lbs per bundle	Multiple bundles, weight restricted to 500 lbs per bundle
Combat Rubber Raiding Craft (See Note 2)	2	4
Heavy Equipment Platforms	3	3
Container Delivery System	16	16
MOAB	1	1

**Notes:**

1. The CRS bundles can be airdropped from the aircraft ramp. Number, size and weight of bundles is a limiting factor. Max weight for the MC-130 ramp is 5000 lbs including the weight of the dual rails (336 lbs) and air deflectors (137 lbs).
2. 3 to 4 CRRCs may be airdropped on a single pass when stacked and rigged for airdrop IAW Army FM 10-542/ Air Force TO 13C7-51-21.

Table 5-10. Combat Talon II Load Capabilities for Equipment and Personnel (Combination Airdrop)

Load	Single-Pass Drop	Total Load
CRS bundles / combat equipped paratroops	Depends on type "A" containers/20 paratroops. Total static lines not to exceed 20 on anchor cable.	Depends on type "A" containers and space available.
Door bundles: max size & weight / combat-equipped paratroops (through paratroop doors)	2@500 lbs each and 48x30x66 inch or less / 32 paratroops	2@500 lbs each and 32 paratroops
AHKIO sleds / combat-equipped paratroops	2/26 paratroops	2/26 paratroops
Combat Rubber Raiding Craft or inflated assault boat / paratroops (See Note 3)	2/18 paratroops or 1/19 paratroops	2/18 paratroops or 1/19 paratroops
Heavy Equipment Platforms / paratroops	3 platforms / 20 paratroops	3 platforms / 20 paratroops
Container Delivery System / paratroops	12 containers / 20 paratroops	12 containers / 20 paratroops

**Notes:**

1. Number and size of equipment items may affect number of paratroops.
2. There is no combination airdrop capability with HSLADS.
3. HSLADS and CRS loads may be positioned while airborne for multiple DZs.
4. 3 to 4 CRRCs may be airdropped on a single pass when stacked and rigged for airdrop IAW Army FM 10-542/ Air Force TO 13C7-51-21.

### *Improvements*

The Combat Talon I underwent an extensive modification and improvement program called Mod 90 to increase maintainability, survivability, and capability in hostile environments, improve command and control, and enhance navigational ability.

### *MC-130H Combat Talon II*

In addition to the existing 10 Combat Talon I aircraft, 20 production C-130Hs have been modified to the Combat Talon II configuration. This program was developed to supplement the Combat Talon I and resolve the shortfall in long-range assets. Avionics systems are different from the Combat Talon I MOD 90 improvement. The weather and threat environment capabilities are the same as the Combat Talon I. The additional equipment and differences between the two are as follows:

- a. Integrated avionics on flight deck (glass cockpit)
- b. TF/TA and search radar, can look and TF through turns (Emerson APQ-170)
- c. Infrared detection system (IDS)
- d. Helicopter refueling (HAR) capability has been added to all 15 SOS assigned MC-130H (overseas units cannot perform HAR)
- e. Crew size is seven
- f. Cargo compartment loading of six pallets.

### *Additional Information*

AFTTP 3-1, Vol 33 (S), contains additional/classified information.

### *AC-130H SPECTRE Gunship/AC-130U Spooky*

Spectre and Spooky are heavily armed aircraft. Both have side-firing weapons integrated with sophisticated sensor, navigation, and fire control systems to provide accurate firepower during extended loiter periods, at night, and in adverse weather.

Spectre has an impressive combat history. During Vietnam, gunships destroyed more than 10,000 trucks and were credited with many life-saving close air support missions. AC 130s suppressed enemy air defense systems and attacked ground forces during

Operation Urgent Fury in Grenada. This enabled the successful assault of Point Salines airfield via airdrop and airland of friendly forces. Gunships had a starring role during Operation Just Cause in Panama by destroying Panamanian Defense Force Headquarters and numerous command and control facilities by accurate employment of ordnance in an urban environment. As the only close air support platform in the theater, Spectre was credited with saving many friendly lives. Both Spectre and Spooky aircraft have played prominent roles in Operation Enduring Freedom and were key to the liberation of the people of Afghanistan. The Spooky aircraft were also heavily involved with Operation Iraqi Freedom and the overthrow of Saddam Hussein.

### *Mission*

The AC-130 is a C-130 modified with gun systems, electronic and electro-optical sensors, fire control systems, enhanced navigation systems, sophisticated communications, defensive systems, and inflight refueling capability. These systems give the gunship crew the capability to acquire and identify targets day or night, coordinate with ground forces and command and control agencies, and deliver accurate firepower in support of both conventional and special operations missions. The gunship is best suited for the CAS mission and has a unique capability to deliver ordnance in extremely close proximity to friendly forces in a troops-in-contact (TIC) situation. Gunships can also perform interdiction and armed reconnaissance missions, particularly where limited collateral damage is required. The gunship can be employed in low-to- medium threat environments as defined by AFTTP 3-1, Vol 31. Within permissive environments, the AC-130 is effective in the following roles:

- a. Close Air Support (CAS)
- b. Interdiction
- c. Armed Reconnaissance
- d. Point Defense
- e. Escort (Convoy, Naval, Train, Rotary-Wing)
- f. Surveillance
- g. Landing/Drop Zone (LZ/ DZ) Support
- h. Limited Airborne Command and Control.

## Equipment

### General Specifications

- a. Prime Contractor: Lockheed
- b. Horsepower: 3,750 equivalent shaft power
- c. Wingspan: 132' 7"
- d. Length: 97' 9"
- e. Height: 38' 6"
- f. Unrefueled range (combat ammo load): AC-130U-1200 NM; AC-130H-1200 NM; Unlimited with air refueling
- g. Unrefueled combat radius (1-hour loiter): 500 NM
- h. Speed: 250 Knots (True Airspeed) cruise. 300 mph (at sea level)
- i. Maximum gross weight: 155,000 lbs, 175,000 lbs with waiver
- j. Fuel load: 40,000 lbs (inflight refuelable)
- k. Fuel type: JP 8
- l. Fuel consumption: 6,000 pounds per hour; 6,500 during low level.

### Mission Equipment

The following equipment has been added to the standard C-130:

- a. Dual Fire Control Computers
- b. Enhanced Navigation System (Dual INS, GPS, Doppler)
- c. Secure Communications: 2 HF, 2 VHF AM/FM, 2 UHF, SATCOM, Data Burst
- d. Inflight Refueling
- e. Low Light Level Television (LLTV/AC-130H) with Laser Illuminator
- f. All Light Level Television (ALLTV/AC-130U) with Laser Illuminator
- g. Infrared Detection Set (IDS)
- h. APQ-150 Beacon Tracking Radar (BTR/AC-130H)
- i. APQ-180 Strike Radar (AC-130U)
- j. IR and Electronic Countermeasures, Active and Passive
- k. 25mm GAU-12 Cannon, Trainable (AC-130U)
- l. 40mm M2A1 (modified) Automatic Cannon, Trainable
- m. 105mm M137 Cannon, Trainable
- n. Battle Damage Assessment (BDA) Recorder.



AC-130H Spectre Gunship

### Fire Control Computers

Fire control computers resolve all variables to complete fire control solutions. They can store pre-selected targets and sensor sightline targets. Both aircraft have multiple computers to provide redundancy. Additionally, the AC-130H/U can engage targets using dual target attack (DTA). DTA can be used against two separate targets or used to deliver maximum ordnance on a single target by allocating an individual sensor and gun to each fire control channel. Also, DTA can be used with one sensor and two guns on the same target. For dual target engagements, with targets separated by more than about 800 m, the gunship may not be able to engage both targets during all portions of the orbit. A live-fire boresight area is required prior to firing in close proximity of friendly forces. Employment altitude depends on terrain, threat environment, and weather.

### Navigation

Navigation aids include two TACANS and VORs, the GPS, dual INUs, and Doppler feed into a Kalman filter that produces excellent navigational accuracy. Additionally, the navigation computers can store targets and navigation points.

### Communications

Communications radios include two HF, three (two AC-130U) VHF, AM/FM, two UHF, and one SATCOM. Secure voice is available for HF, VHF (KY-100), UHF, and SATCOM (KY-58). Both UHF radios are Have Quick II capable.

## Sensors

Electro-optical and visual sensors require visual meteorological conditions (VMC). Of special note, the TV system degrades during sunrise and sunset. The gunship cannot see color; all images are viewed in shades of gray and recorded onto videotape for review after the mission.

The ability to acquire and identify a given target depends on the size of the target, slant range, contrast with the environment, and weather conditions. The crew coordination involved to ensure the limiting of collateral damage is phenomenal. The sensor operator will find the desired target. After validating the target, the fire control officer will assign a gun to the sensor. The navigator will confirm both the target and gun/sensor combination are correct. After the navigator confirms all information, the pilot will authorize the gunners to arm the guns. Once the guns are armed, the sensor operator will then engage the targets. During the engagement, the fire control officer continuously checks the accuracy of the fire control system and updates as necessary.

The following sensors are employed:

- a. **LLTV (AC-130H).** The LLLTV can be used in extremely low light, below about 30% illumination, in conjunction with gated laser illuminator (GLINT). The GLINT is normally used only in a permissive environment. The LLLTV has a wide and a narrow field of view (FOV). The narrow FOV magnification is about 22 to 1. This gives an FOV of approximately 70 m at 6,000' AGL, 8,000' slant range.
- b. **ALLTV (AC-130U).** The ALLTV also uses a laser illuminator (LIA). The ALLTV has a wide, medium, and narrow FOV. The narrow FOV magnification is about 45 to 1.
- c. **IDS.** Both aircraft use the AAQ-26 IDS, which requires no visible light. This system has a wide and narrow FOV. The narrow FOV of the AAQ-26 magnification is about 43 to 1.

**Defensive Equipment.** The AC-130 is equipped with a variety of defensive equipment. Though some basic differences exist between the H and U models,



AC-130 Live Fire Mission

both aircraft are equipped with essentially the same capabilities.

- a. Radar Warning: ALR-69
- b. Electronic Countermeasures
- c. AC-130H: ALQ-172 (V) 3
- d. AC-130U: ALQ-172 (V) 1A
- e. Chaff/Flare System: ALE-40 (to be replaced with ALE-47)
- f. IR Countermeasures: AAQ-24 Directional Infrared Countermeasures System
- g. Missile Warning: AAR-44A.

All defensive equipment on the gunship is designed to defeat a single engagement, not allow prolonged exposure to a threat. Mission planning to avoid a threat envelope, either by circumnavigation or by altitude separation, is the primary means of survival. The threat environments the gunship can be employed against can be found in AFTTP 3-1. AC-130 (S). The specific capability of defensive systems and tactics against a given threat is classified. Further, risk assessment decisions are a complex balance of mission priority, available options, threat system, proficiency of the threat system operators, and weather conditions. Therefore, a list of the probability of survival against a specific threat is inappropriate. The crews tasked to fly a mission, additional planners, and intelligence support together provide the best vehicle to determine the probability of survival and mission success.

## Employment

**Close Air Support (CAS) and Troops in Contact (TIC).** The AC-130 is an excellent low threat, night CAS platform. The gunship can provide accurate fire support with limited collateral damage, and it can remain on station for extended periods of time. The AC-130U visual sensors and radar provide real time reconnaissance of the employment area.

Unlike other fixed-wing CAS aircraft, the AC-130 does not require forward area controller (FAC) support for ordnance delivery in proximity to friendly forces, allowing fire support officers, team leaders, etc., to control ordnance delivery. Since the AC-130 delivers ordnance through a pylon turn, the target is usually visible and may be engaged throughout the entire orbit. As a result, run-in headings are not appropriate.

The first consideration for CAS missions is to positively identify the friendly position. Friendly forces may use various marking devices to expedite acquisition. Radio contact with the ground forces is maintained at all times during firing, unless comm-out procedures are coordinated in advance. To reduce communications during preplanned missions, as much briefing information as possible is coordinated in advance.

**Interdiction.** Air interdiction consists of air operations conducted to destroy, neutralize, or delay the enemy's potential before it can be brought to bear effectively against friendly forces. Air interdiction is conducted at great enough distances from friendly forces that detailed integration with the fire and movement of friendly forces is not required. The gunship is best suited to strike small targets in a permissive environment where limited collateral damage is required. The gunship's accuracy, low-yield munitions, and target identification capability reduces the risk of collateral damage. However, the gunship lacks great hitting power and area coverage capability, which limits the capability against hardened or large area targets.

**Armed Reconnaissance.** Gunship armed reconnaissance is flown to locate and attack targets of opportunity (enemy material, personnel, and facilities) in assigned or general areas or along assigned lines of communication (LOC). Gunship armed reconnaissance is not

intended for attacking specific, briefed targets. The gunship can effectively search LOCs, however the narrow field of view of the sensors limits the gunship's ability to search large areas. The time required to perform armed reconnaissance must be considered with respect to the threat.

**Helicopter Landing Zone (LZ) and Drop Zone (DZ) Support.** The gunship can provide escort, LZ/DZ security, and fire support for helicopter operations. Mission accomplishment is achieved through a joint pre brief of route, special procedures, and establishment of a communications net (fire support coordination net). The gunship can assist helicopters in search and rescue missions as necessary. Helicopter use of beacons greatly aids in vectoring. The gunship can provide LZ/DZ weather and threat updates to all participating aircraft. The gunship can also destroy unrecoverable loads that have landed off a DZ and should not fall into enemy hands.

**Fighter Escort Operations.** Fighters can operate with the gunship as part of a strike package. Fighter assets provide additional strike capability with greater stand-off, hard-target kill capability, and larger area suppression weapons. Fighters can also provide real-time threat suppression in the target area and during en route portions of the mission. Operations with fighter aircraft require effective teamwork between the dissimilar aircraft and increase the complexity of crew coordination on the gunship. Flexibility and situational awareness must be maintained at all times.

### Specialized Missions

- a. **Point Defense.** This is essentially a preplanned CAS mission. The situation may allow for in-depth planning and coordination, but procedures are the same as for any CAS scenario.
- b. **Escort.** Another version of CAS is escort. The gunship can provide convoy, naval, train, helicopter escort/vectoring surveillance, and limited protection of friendly forces from enemy ambush. Communications with the supported commander are essential. Mission accomplishment is achieved through a joint brief of route, special procedures, and establishment of a communications net. Ground

Figure 5-3.  
AC-130  
Call for Fire

<b>AC-130 CALL FOR FIRE</b>	
1. Observer/Warning Order:	“ _____ , <b>this is</b> _____ , <b>Fire Mission, Over.</b> ” (AC-130) (Observer)
2. Friendly Location/ Mark:	“ <b>My position</b> _____ <b>marked by</b> _____” (TRP, Grid, etc.) (Beacon, IR Strobe, etc.)
3. Target Location:	“ _____.” (Bearing (magnetic) & Range (meters), TRP, Grid, etc.)
4. Target Description/Mark:	“ _____ , <b>marked by</b> _____ , <b>Over.</b> ” (Target Description) (IR Pointer/Tracer, etc., or None)
<p><b>AS REQUIRED</b></p> <p>1. Clearance: Transmission of the Fire Mission is clearance to fire. Danger Close is 200 m with the 105mm and 125 m with the 40mm and 25mm. For closer fire the observer must accept responsibility for increased risk. State “<b>Cleared Danger Close.</b>” This clearance may be preplanned.</p> <p>2. At My Command: Add “<b>at my command</b>” at the end of line four. The gunship will call “<b>ready to fire</b>” when ready.</p> <p>3. Adjust Fire: Only adjust for marking rounds or incorrect target. Adjust from impact, give range and cardinal direction.</p>	

#### Notes

1. Observer/Warning Order. This line closely resembles an artillery CFF format. This may be a mission other than a fire mission (e.g., reconnaissance).
2. Friendly Location/Mark. In a TIC situation, the gunship should identify all friendly forces prior to engaging targets. If this is not practical, the gunship can engage targets when the friendly forces are known to be clear. The briefing should include any marking devices such as beacons, IR strobes, etc.
3. Target Location. The preferred method is to reference a target in terms of magnetic bearing and range, in meters, from the observer’s position. Grid coordinates may be used. Targets may also be described in relation to target reference points (TRP), roads, or rivers.
4. Target Description/Mark. This aids in both identification and weapon selection. Marking by laser identifier or tracer fire may aid in target acquisition. The ground party will normally not mark the target until the gunship calls ready. This reduces the observers’ exposure with an active marking source.
5. Clearance. Normally, transmission of the fire support request is clearance to fire. However, if the target is inside the danger close range (200 meters for the 105mm and 125 meters for all other guns), the controller should state “clear danger close” or pass the ground commander’s initials. Danger close is based on the 0.1% probability of incapacitation PI, based on the 5-minute assault criteria, using prone soldiers in winter clothing and a helmet. The 10.0% PI should be considered as the normal limit to close fire support.
6. At My Command (AMC). If the observer wants to delay the mission until his signal, he will add AMC to line four. When the crew is ready to fire the mission, the navigator should call “ready to fire.”
7. Adjust Fire. Normally, the crew will positively identify the target. However, in the unlikely event that the crew cannot identify a specific target, a marking round can be used. In this case, the ground party should make adjustments from the impact in range and bearing or cardinal direction.
8. Peacetime Restrictions. During any peacetime live-fire mission, the following restrictions apply:
  - Fire no closer to ground parties than 650 meters with 105mm and 500 meters with 40mm or 20mm.
  - The gunship will use no-fire zones if the ground party is within 700 meters for the 105mm, 950 meters for the 40mm, and 2,000 meters for the 25mm.

- parties using electronic beacons greatly aid in force vectoring.
- c. **Reconnaissance.** The night capabilities of the gunship, combined with its range and endurance, make the gunship a viable reconnaissance platform. The gunship has the capability to record from all the sensors with audio and video imagery. The gunship is more vulnerable to enemy threats than other tactical reconnaissance platforms.
  - d. **Personnel Recovery.** The gunship can support personnel recovery operations in a permissive environment. These missions include combined operations with helicopters and fighters. Because of the potential complexity of these missions, thorough mission planning is essential.
  - e. **Limited Airborne Command and Control.** The gunship can be used to relay information between ground parties or as a ground-to-air or air-to-air liaison on a limited basis. Planners must realize that use of the gunship in this capacity could adversely affect the tactical mission and therefore must be weighed carefully.

### Weapons

Firing altitude depends on terrain, threat environment, and weather. Gun selection depends on target type and damage desired. There are four basic target types: soft area, soft point, hardened area, and hardened point. To limit collateral damage, a live-fire area may be required to boresight weapons prior to employment. The gunship weapons do not have a hard-kill capability against heavy armor or bunkers. However, the 105mm has Super-quick fuses with both point detonation and 0.05-second delay,

concrete penetrators, and proximity fuses for airburst. 40mm have point detonate fuses.

### Marking Devices

**Beacons.** Marking devices can expedite identification of friendly forces, improving fire support responsiveness and limiting the exposure time for the gunship. Beacons provide a rapid means to identify and update the friendly position. During instrument meteorological conditions, beacons are the only way for the AC-130H to locate friendly positions. Radar reflective items may also be used with the AC-130U radar. These are line of sight methods and can be used with OFFSET firing mode. Beacon/reference point offsets should not normally exceed 1,500 meters (1,000 meters for Dual Target Attack, AC-130U only). Offset firing is not as accurate as direct mode of fire and is normally used in poor weather conditions with the ground commander or team leader calling misses and corrections to the aircraft. As a rule, the shorter the offset distance, the more accurate the weapon. The two electronic sensors on the AC-130H, the APQ-150 BTR, and the APQ-180 strike radar on the AC-130U, work with several types of beacons. Gunship crews are proficient in beacon use.

Radar beacons used with the BTR (AC-130H) and strike radar (AC-130U):

- a. PPN-I9 (I-band, codes B and G only)
- b. ST-181X (codes 1–10).
- c. Visual Marking:
- d. Strobe Light
- e. Flashlights and Vehicle Lights
- f. Fire Flies
- g. Chemlights
- h. Reflective Tape

Table 5-11. AC-130H/U Weapons Capability

Weapon	Target Types	Min/Max Alt (feet AGL)	Rounds per min	Combat Load	Remarks
25 mm	Personnel (light cover) and small vehicles	3000/18000	1800	3,000 HEI	AC-130U only, trainable guns
40mm	Personnel (medium cover) and small vehicles	4500/18000	100	256 HEI	
105 mm	Personnel, vehicles/APC, buildings	4500/20000	6-10	100 HEI, AC-130U 136 HEI, AC-130H	

- i. Pen Gun Flares
- j. Signaling Mirrors
- k. Laser Pointers (LPL-30, GPC-1a, etc.)
- l. Tracer Fire
- m. Mortar/Artillery Marking Rounds

### Heat Sources

Heat sources such as MRE heaters, stoves, etc., can normally be identified by the IDS.

### Weapons Delivery

**Training.** No-fire headings may be imposed or may be established by the aircrew, due to ordnance ricochet fans when the target is between the gunship and the friendly position.

- a. Fire No Closer Than:
  - 600 meters with the 105mm HE and HF
  - 400 meters with the 25mm/105mm TP
  - 300 meters with the 40mm
- b. No Fire Headings Closer Than:
  - 2,000 meters with the 25mm TP
  - 950 meters with the 40mm AP
  - 700 meters with the 105mm TP
- c. During IMC Live Fire, Fire No Closer Than:
  - 650 meters with 105mm
  - 500 meters with the 25mm/40mm

**Combat.** The ground forces commander must accept responsibility each time ordnance is requested inside of the Joint Munitions Effectiveness Manual (JMEM) Danger Close Range.

- a. JMEM Danger Close Range for 25 mm: inside 65 meters
- b. JMEM Danger Close Range for 40mm: inside 75 meters
- c. JMEM Danger Close Range for 105mm: inside 165 meters

### Aircraft Comparison

Although the AC-130H and AC-130U use very dissimilar avionics and other systems, fire support to the ground party is generally comparable. The capabilities of the AC-130U will not be required for most fire support missions, but provide benefits under certain circumstances. The following describes some of the most important employment differences.

- a. The strike radar gives the AC-130U adverse weather capability.
- b. The 25mm gun on the AC-130U can be brought to bear quickly because it is trainable and can be employed throughout much of the gunship flight envelope. The 25mm gun is only effective against soft targets.
- c. The pressurization system on the AC-130U improves deployability and range.
- d. PPN-19 and SST-181 can be used with both the AC-130H and AC-130U.

### Limited Threat Capability

- a. Mission success is largely determined by the threat.
- b. The AC 130 operates best during cover of darkness. It is extremely vulnerable during daylight operation and is most suited for operations in a low-threat environment. By operating over an undercast, the AC-130U can degrade daylight threats, but must rely on radar as its only sensor.
- c. Radar guided anti aircraft artillery, surface to air missiles, and some IR MANPAD systems seriously degrade mission execution and desired objectives. If radar threats are known or suspected, preemptive jamming or SEAD (suppression of enemy air defenses) is required, SEAD being preferable.
- d. Certain threats may dictate higher employment altitudes. This should be considered in mission planning, as sensor resolution decreases with altitude. As range increases fire control accuracy degrades slightly, reducing the gunships' ability to hit point targets.
- e. The threat environment limits the use of laser illuminators (the "BURN"), as it illuminates both the aircraft and the ground party to anyone properly equipped.

### Planning Considerations

- a. All missions benefit from face-to-face briefings, especially fire support missions.
- b. Common imagery, comm-out procedures, charts, and local operating procedures enhance mission success.

- c. Normal special operations mission planning-to-execution cycle covers 72 hours, but may be shortened due to specific mission constraints. Normal tactical mission planning-to-execution cycle is approximately 24 hours.
- d. AC-130 performance is marginal at altitudes above 15,000 feet MSL due to high gross weights and performance limitations.
- e. AC-130 operations from forward operating bases with high field elevations and/or high-density altitudes require analysis by gunship planners for mission limitations.
- f. Limited number of aircraft and single home operating location make concealed deployment difficult.
- g. Large crews and extensive support package contribute to significant mission signature. Unimproved airfields are not acceptable due to high gross weights, performance limitations, and sensitive avionics.
- h. Gunship weapons have no hard kill capability against heavy or reactive armor, reinforced bunkers, etc.

### Aircrew

Mission crew size on both gunship models is 13 personnel. The augmented crew size is 18 (17 AC-130U) personnel. Basic mission crew consists of the pilot, copilot, navigator, fire control officer, electronic warfare officer, engineer, loadmaster, TV sensor operator, infrared sensor operator, and four gunners. Selected crews are qualified in NVG low-level missions.

- a. Crew rest: 12 hours
- b. Tactical crew duty day: 12 hours (16 hours total). Augmented crew: 16 hours (18 hours total).
- c. Crew complement may vary depending on the mission type and duty day. Crew requirements for ferrying are less.
- d. Minimum tactical crew: 13
- e. Maximum crew: 21.

### Time on Station

- a. Unless continuous surveillance is required, the AC-130 holds outside the target area to



AC-130H

limit exposure of the aircraft and the ground party.

- b. Vulnerability increases with time spent over target, as the element of surprise is lost and chance for acquisition by the enemy increases.
- c. Normal mission profile planning times: take-off/sensor alignment: 0.5 hr; en route time and time over target (TOT), including RTB: 4.0 hrs; descent and landing: 0.5 hr.

### Weather Capability

Gunships have a limited capability to deliver fire-power under conditions of low ceilings and/or poor visibility. The APQ-180 strike radar gives the AC-130U a good capability against radar significant targets, including those marked by beacon. This enables the AC-130U to have the capability to shoot through clouds. For beacon offsets with either aircraft, a ground controller must be present to correct the gunship's ordnance for target, range, and magnetic bearing from the location of the beacon. The systems tend to be more accurate with shorter offset distances.

### Mission Briefing Requirements

- a. **Friendly Location.** Universal Transverse Mercator (UTM), range in meters, magnetic bearing from reference point, etc. Include all friendly locations.
- b. **Friendly Mark.** Beacons, IR strobes, flares, etc.
- c. **Target Locations.** UTM coordinates, range and bearing from observer, Target Reference Point (TRP), etc.

- d. **Target Descriptions.** Number and type.
- e. **Target Marking.** Sparkle (i.e., LPL-30), tracer, etc.

#### **Additional Information**

AFTTP 3-1.AC-130 (S), contains additional/classified information.

#### **MC-130P Combat Shadow**

AFSOC MC-130P Combat Shadow aircraft (referred to as the HC-130 prior to 1996) were deployed to Saudi Arabia and Turkey in support of Desert Storm. They operated from main bases and remote locations. Their missions included air refueling of SOF helicopters over friendly and hostile territory, PSYOP, and leaflet drops.

The Combat Shadow also played a significant role in both Operation Enduring Freedom and Operation Iraqi Freedom. The mission set was the same as in Desert Storm plus personnel and equipment airdrop and airland resupply/insertion/extraction.

#### **Mission**

The Combat Shadow mission is clandestine formation/single-ship intrusion of hostile territory to provide air refueling to special operations vertical-lift aircraft, infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply of special operations forces by airdrop or airland operations. The primary emphasis is on NVG operations, but they can be accomplished during the day. The Combat Shadow primarily flies missions at night to reduce probability of visual acquisition and intercept by airborne threats. Secondary mission capabilities may include airdrop of small special operations teams, small bundles, and combat rubber raiding craft; as well as NVG takeoff and landing procedures, tactical airborne radar approaches, and inflight refueling as a receiver. The MC 130P can be employed in a low-to-medium threat environment as defined in AFTTP 3-1.

The aircraft was originally modified for combat search and rescue (CSAR) and maintains most of its rescue capability. High-intensity parachute flares, various smoke-producing pyrotechnics, and sea dye can still be carried aboard this aircraft for helicopter overwater escort and rescue.

#### **Equipment**

##### **General Specifications**

- a. **Builder:** Lockheed
- b. **Power Plant:** Four Allison T56-A-15 turboprop engines
- c. **Thrust:** 4,910 shaft horsepower each engine
- d. **Length:** 98' 9" (30.09 meters)
- e. **Height:** 38' 6" (11.7 meters)
- f. **Wingspan:** 132' 7" (40.4 meters)
- g. **Speed:** 289 miles per hour (at sea level)
- h. **Ceiling:** 33,000'
- i. **Maximum Takeoff Weight:** 155,000 lbs
- j. **Range:** Beyond 4,000 miles
- k. **Crew:** Four officers (pilot, copilot, primary navigator, secondary navigator); four enlisted men (flight engineer, communications systems operator, two loadmasters)
- l. **Air Force Inventory:** Active Component 24/ Reserve Component 4

Some aircraft are modified with the Universal Air Refueling Receptacle Slipway Installation (UARRSI) system for inflight refueling as a receiver, and all aircraft are modified with the self-contained navigation systems (SCNS) and GPS. These modifications greatly increase the range and navigational accuracy of the MC-130P. The Special Operations Forces Improvement (SOFI) modification will give the aircraft an NVG HUD, a modified radar, and an Infrared Detection System (IDS).

##### **Mission Equipment**

- a. Air refueling system for vertical lift aircraft
- b. Inflight refueling, receiver operations (UARRSI) (majority of assigned aircraft)
- c. Internal fuel tanks (Benson tanks)
- d. Airborne radar (APN-59E)
- e. Self-Contained Navigation System (SCNS)
- f. Radar warning receiver (ALR-69)
- g. Chaff and flare dispensers (ALE-40) (to be replaced by ALE-47)
- h. Missile Warning Receiver (AAR-44A)
- i. Secure Speech (KY-58/75) UHF, VHF, VHF-FM, HF, and SATCOM
- j. Have Quick II radios
- k. Digital Data Burst
- l. NVG (ANVIS-VI and 4949)
- m. NVG Heads-Up Display

## Employment

**Low Level.** The MC-130P employs night tactical operations (NTO) procedures. NTO missions are flown in VMC using NVG. The profile is flown at 300 to 500 feet above ground level using terrain masking. If necessary, the mission can be flown with minimal visual and electronic emissions. The range of the mission depends on several factors: length of the low-level route, en route weather and winds, and the air refueling offload requirements. Portions of the profile may be flown at high altitude to minimize fuel consumption. NTO procedures are used to avoid enemy detection in a non-permissive environment to reach the objective area.

**Formation.** The MC-130P normally flies a formation of aircraft to provide multiple simultaneous refueling of large helicopter formations. An airborne spare tanker is also a part of the formation. Aircraft are flown with 200' to 500' separation.

**Air Refueling.** This is the primary mission of the Combat Shadow. To significantly decrease the amount of time required to refuel receivers, the Combat Shadow can simultaneously refuel two helicopters/CV-22s. Minimum refueling altitude is 1,000' AGL for training. For operational missions, lower altitudes may be used. Refueling is accomplished on NVGs.

**Airdrops.** The Combat Shadow can airdrop personnel or equipment. The drop zone point of impact (PI) must be marked. The location, size, and marking of drop zones must conform to AFI 13-217. Normally the navigator determines the release point using manual Computed Air Release Point (CARP) procedures, parachute ballistic data, and wind effects. He visually directs the pilot to the release point. Alternate methods of deployment include Visual Ground Marked Release System (GMRS), Verbally Initiated Release System (VIRS), jumpmaster directed airdrops, and parabundle and free fall drop procedures for door bundles.

- a. **Personnel Drops.** The Combat Shadow can be used for both static line and free-fall jumps.



MC-130P Refuels CV-22

- Static line low altitude airdrops are conducted at 130 KIAS and a minimum of 800' AGL (for training). The number of jumpers per pass depends on the static line configuration. When using the Combat Shadow as a drop platform, the user must coordinate the number of jumpers so that the aircraft are properly configured.
  - High Altitude Low Opening (HALO) airdrops are made above 3000' AGL where a free fall is planned prior to parachute opening. The navigator will determine the High Altitude Release Point (HARP). High Altitude High Opening (HAHO) airdrops are normally made above 10,000' AGL, with no free fall to provide long travel distances. Both are flown at 130 KIAS.
- b. **Equipment Drops**
    - Container Delivery System (CDS). CDS bundles are rigged in A-22 and A-23 containers. They are used to deliver supplies, disassembled equipment, or small items of ready-to-use equipment. The maximum container weight is 2,200 lbs without the weight of the parachute. Height will vary, but will not exceed 83" with the parachute unless authorized by specific rigging procedures. CDS are low-level, low-speed (130 knots) gravity drops.

- **Combat Rubber Raiding Craft (CRRC).** Single or stacked CRRC may be dropped from the MC 130P aircraft. The CRRC may be followed by up to 19 static line paratroopers (20 when rigged breakaway). Prior coordination is necessary to ensure the aircraft is properly configured.
- **Door Bundles.** Door bundles are rigged in A-7A or A-21 containers, weighing a maximum of 500 pounds excluding the weight of the parachute. The dimensions, including the parachute, must not exceed 48” by 30” by 66” with the largest dimension placed upright. Loads weighing more than 350 lbs require three trained designated pushers to push the load from the aircraft. Door bundles are normally dropped prior to the paratroopers and rigged with breakaway static lines.
- **Ramp Bundles.** Ramp bundles are rigged and dropped from the aircraft cargo ramp. These bundles are rigged in “A” series containers on a skid board a minimum of 42” wide. The maximum height of a container must not exceed 83”. Loads followed by parachutists must be rigged breakaway,

Table 5-12. Combat Shadow Aircrew Composition

Crew Type	Number	Positions
Combat Crew	8	Pilot, Copilot, 2 Navigators, Flight Engineer, Comm Specialist, Loadmaster
Basic Crew	6	Pilot, Copilot, Navigator, Flight Engineer, Comm Specialist, 2 Loadmasters

unless specifically authorized in a specific rigging manual.

**Airland.** Infil and exfil may be conducted to visible or IR marked landing zones. The SOFI modified aircraft are capable of blacked out (unmarked) NVG landings. Landing zones and lighting must conform to AFI 13-217.

#### *Planning Factors and Considerations*

**Crew.** The aircraft normally carries eight crewmembers. Depending on mission profile and duration, additional crewmembers are carried. All crewmembers are NVG/formation and helicopter air refueling qualified. Special qualifications include high altitude low opening (HALO) airdrop, NVG airland, formation lead, inflight refueling (IFR), and Rigging Alternate Method Zodiac (RAMZ).

- a. Crew Composition. See Table 5-12.

Table 5-13. Combat Shadow Aircraft Performance Characteristics

Characteristic	Criteria
Max Gross Weight	175,000 lbs (waiver required above 155,000 lbs)
Empty Weight	89,000 to 93,000 lbs depending on model and configuration
Usable Fuel	79,000 lbs available offload with a 6-hour mission (15,000 to 20,000 lbs per tanker without waiver) – At 175,000 AGW / 155,000 lbs AGW max fuel 57,226
Number of Troops	24 with equipment (airland)
Air Refueling Transfer Rate	1,000 lbs per minute
Combat Range	12.5 hours (4,277 nm) without refueling 12.5 hours (2,875 nm) low-level
Max AR Speed	120 KIAS
Normal Cruise	250 KIAS
Low-Level Airspeed	210–220 KIAS, 200–250 kts ground speed
Max Speed	290 KIAS
Personnel Drops	130 KIAS, 800 ft min AGL (for training)
Parabundles	120 KIAS, 300 ft min AGL
Bundles (free fall)	130 KIAS, 150 ft min AGL
Type Fuel	JP-8

- b. Crew Duty Day
  - 12 hours training
  - 16 hours operational
  - 22 hours augmented: requires one additional Aircraft Commander, Navigator, Flight Engineer, and Communications Specialist for overwater flights in excess of 16 hours.

#### Other Considerations.

- a. 12 hours of crew rest prior to flight is required once all planning is completed.
- b. Three hours are required prior to takeoff for briefings, final planning, aircraft preflight checks, engine start, taxi, and takeoff.
- c. Most missions are 5 to 6 hrs in duration, to include 3 to 4 hrs of low-level.
- d. Load capabilities are dependent on aircraft configuration and fuel load.
- e. Paratroop capabilities:
  - 12 (6 per door) with 2 Benson tanks installed.
  - 26 (20 Right Door/6 Left door) with 1 Benson.
  - 30 without Benson tanks.
- f. Equipment and door bundle capabilities:
  - Max size: 48”x 30”x 66” or less.
  - Max weight: 500 lbs suspended.
  - Max bundles per pass: 2.
- g. Door bundles and paratroops are limited to 1 bundle per door and 6 troops per pass with Benson tanks installed and 30 (20 right door, 10 left door) without Benson tanks.
- h. CDS bundle capability is dependent on the type of container used.
- i. CRRC, RAMZ, or Inflated Assault capability is one boat and 19 paratroops (limited to 20 static lines per pass)
- j. Drop zone and landing zone requirements. For assault zone (DZ/LZ) requirements, see AFI 13 217.

#### Performance Characteristics

See Table 5-13.

#### Additional Information

AFTTP 3-1, Vol 33 (S), contains additional/classified information.

### MC-130W Combat Spear

The MC-130W, flown by the 73rd Special Operations Squadron, conducts infiltration, exfiltration and resupply of U.S. and allied special operations forces in direct support USSOCOM and theater special operations command taskings. Collateral missions include refueling of special operations vertical lift assets, forward arming and refueling, specialized ordnance delivery, airdrops in support of psychological operations, and limited command and control capabilities. Its world-wide mission is performed primarily at night to reduce operational risk. This aircraft is the result of a program to modify twelve MC-130 aircraft from the 1987 to 1990 year group to replace Talon combat losses experienced over time and to provide additional vertical lift inflight refueling capability.

The aircraft is a highly modified C-130H with improved navigation, threat detection and countermeasures, and communication suites. The navigation suite is a fully integrated Global Positioning System/ Inertial Navigation System that interfaces with the AN/APN-241 Low Power Color Radar and AN/AAQ-17 Infrared Detection System. The improved threat detection and countermeasures systems include advanced radar and missile warning receivers, chaff and flare dispensers and active infrared countermeasures, protecting the aircraft from both radar and infrared-guided threats. The communication systems upgrades include dual SATCOM suite with data burst capability. The aircraft has both interior and exterior night vision goggle compatible lighting.

Structural improvements to the basic C-130H include the addition of the Universal Aerial Refueling Receptacle Slipway Installation (UARRSI), and a strengthened tail. The UARRSI allows the aircraft to conduct inflight refueling as a receiver, and strengthening of the tail will allow High Speed Low Level Aerial Delivery System airdrop operations. The MC-130W is equipped with MK32B-902E refueling pods. These pods are part of the most technologically advanced refueling system available, and provide the ability to refuel special operations helicopters and the CV-22.

### General Characteristics

- a. Primary Function: Infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply of SOF; also provides inflight refueling of special operations vertical lift assets
- b. Builder: Lockheed
- c. Power Plant: Four Allison T56-A-15 turboprop engines
- d. Thrust: 4,910 shaft horsepower each engine
- e. Length: 98 feet, 9 inches (30.09 meters)
- f. Height: 38 feet, 6 inches (11.7 meters)
- g. Wingspan: 132 feet, 7 inches (40.4 meters)
- h. Speed: 300 mph
- i. Ceiling: 33,000 feet (10,000 meters)
- j. Maximum Takeoff Weight: 155,000 pounds (69,750 kilograms)
- k. Maximum Normal Payload: 33,000 pounds
- l. Maximum Range with Maximum Normal Payload: 1,208 miles (1,050 NM) Inflight refueling extends this to unlimited range
- m. Crew: Seven (pilot, copilot, two navigators, flight engineer and two loadmasters)
- n. Inventory: 12 projected



MC-130W

Enduring Freedom, Operation Iraqi Freedom (2) and Operation Secure Tomorrow.

### Mission

Commando Solo conducts Information Operations in support of combatant commanders' objectives during all phases of war, military operations other than war, and civil operations. EC-130J aircraft are primarily employed for Influence Operations and secondarily for Electronic Warfare. Tertiary missions include collection and Command and Control Radio Relay. Solo can also be employed by civil authorities to support strategic communications and humanitarian or disaster relief operations.

### Equipment

#### General Specifications

- a. Builder: Lockheed Aircraft Co.
- b. Power Plant: Four Rolls-Royce AE2100D3 turboprops
- c. Length: 97.75 feet (29.7 meters)
- d. Height: 38.8 feet (11.8 meters)
- e. Wingspan: 132.6 feet (40.3 meters)
- f. Cruise speed: 310 mph
- g. Ceiling: 28,000 feet (8,534 meters)
- h. Maximum Takeoff Weight: 164,000 pounds (69,750 kilograms)
- i. Range: 2,300 nautical miles unrefueled
- j. Crew: pilot, copilot, flight systems officer, mission systems officer, loadmaster (2 loadmasters)

### EC-130J Commando Solo III

In 1990 the EC-130 joined the newly formed Air Force Special Operations Command and has since been designated Commando Solo. This unique aircraft is continually improving its capabilities. The only operator continues to be the 193d Special Operations Wing of the Pennsylvania Air National Guard, based at Harrisburg International Airport. In 2006, the 193 SOW completed its conversion from EC-130E to EC-130J aircraft. Commando Solo has been employed in every major contingency since 1970, to include Operation Desert Shield/Storm, Operation Sea Signal/Uphold Democracy, Operation Joint Guard, Operation Southern Watch/Desert Thunder, Operation Allied Force, Operation

on combat missions), five electronic communications systems operators

- k. Inventory: Active force, 0; Reserve, 0; ANG, 3

**Transmitters.** Eight special mission transmitters are installed in each EC-130J. They are capable of high power (1000 Watts to 10,000 Watts) transmissions in the frequency range from 0.450 MHz to 1000 MHz. Seven full-power transmissions can be performed simultaneously. Broadcast frequencies can be discrete, which ensures transmissions will not interfere with adjacent frequencies or channels. Transmissions can be adjusted to coincide with established world-wide telecommunication standards. Modes of operation include AM, FM, CW, SSB, ISB and color analog television in any standard worldwide.

- a. MF Transmitter. One 10-kW output power transmitter, frequency band 450 kHz to 1.999 MHz, modes of operation CW, AM, SSB, and ISB. Mainly used for commercial AM band transmissions. Used for electronic attack against same.
- b. HF Transmitter. One 10-kW output power transmitter, frequency band 2.000 to 29.9999 MHz, modes of operation CW, AM, SSB, and ISB. Mainly used for short-wave transmissions, (BBC, VOA, et al). Used for electronic attack against short-wave, military comms, data links.
- c. VHF Low Transmitters. Two 1-kW output power transmitters, frequency band 30.000 to 230.000 MHz, modes of operation CW, AM, FM, Wide Band, Sweep, Step. Mainly used for commercial FM transmissions, military comm nets, civilian nets, world-wide color TV channels 2–3. Used for electronic attack against same.
- d. VHF High Transmitters. Two 1-kW output power transmitters, frequency band 100.000 to 500.000 MHz, modes of operation CW, AM, FM, Wide Band, Sweep, Step. Mainly used for commercial FM transmissions, military comm nets, civilian nets. Used for electronic attack against same and A-band radars.
- e. UHF Transmitters. One 1-kW output power transmitter, frequency band 470.000 MHz



EC-130J

to 1.000 GHz, modes of operation CW, AM, FM, Wide Band, Sweep, Step. Mainly used for commercial FM transmissions, military comm nets, civilian nets, world-wide color TV channels 14–79. Used for electronic attack against same and A/B/C-band radars.

- f. TV-80 Transmitter. One, 3-cavity, 10-kW output power transmitter, frequency bands 47.000 to 88.000, 170.000 to 230.000, and 470.000 to 860.000 MHz, modes of operation monochrome standards B/G/H, M/N, D/K/K1 and color standards NTSC, PAL, SECAM. TV channels 2–79 in the U.S. and 2–69 worldwide. Used for electronic attack against same and wide-band applications.

**Antennas.** Thirteen antennas are dedicated to special mission transmissions. They include high gain, directional VHF and UHF antennas as well as omnidirectional stubs. Two length-adjustable trailing wire antennas are available for MF and HF operations. An additional four antennas are dedicated to special mission receivers.

**Receivers.** Five special mission receivers provide signal reception in the frequency range of 0.250 MHz through 1100 MHz. Received signals can also be retransmitted or recorded. Two spectrum analyzers with a frequency range of 9 kHz to 26.5 GHz are installed to provide analysis of both received and transmitted signals. The spectrum analyzers also provide a receive capability. This suite of equipment can also be used in intelligence gathering functions.

**Command and Control Communications.** Standard C-130J radios include two each HF, VHF, and UHF systems, capable of secure and anti-jam communications. EC-130J aircraft also have three each ARC-210 SATCOM/LOS radios capable of secure voice and data communications. All radios can be used by both flight and mission crew. In addition, Blue force tracker (MTX) is installed on each aircraft.

**Defensive Systems.** Defensive equipment includes AN/ALR-56M Radar Warning Receiver, AN/ALE-47 Countermeasures Dispensing System, AN/AAR-47 Missile Warning System, and AN/ALQ-157 Infrared Countermeasure System. Countermeasures dispensers deploy chaff and decoy flares. In addition, Tactical Information Broadcast System is employed as a clip-in capability.

**Employment.** Commando Solo performs missions during daylight and nighttime hours. It is air refuelable from KC-135 or KC-10 tankers. In general, higher altitudes result in greater range for electronic transmissions. Aircraft orbits are offset from target areas. Crews are trained in NVG airland operations.

**War.** For contingency operations Commando Solo is typically OPCON to a Joint Special Operations Task Force (JSOTF) and TACON, per mission basis, for Influence Operations to the Joint PSYOP Task Force (JPOTF). Additional Information Operations taskings, including EW, are TACON through the Joint Force Air Component Commander (JFACC), in coordination with the Electronic Warfare Coordination Cell (EWCC).

**MOOTW.** Commando Solo supports the Joint Task Force Commander in operations such as combatant/noncombatant evacuations and humanitarian assistance.

**Civil Affairs.** Commando Solo can be employed for civil relief operations to replace damaged, destroyed, or unusable broadcast stations or expand their areas of coverage. Commando Solo can also relay communications for disaster response agencies. Taskings can be made through USSOCOM or NGB.

### *Additional Information*

For detailed information see the following documents:

- a. AFTTP 3-1, Vol 32, EC-130J Combat Aircraft Fundamentals (S)
- b. AFTTP 3-3, Vol 32, EC-130J Tactical Employment
- c. AFTTP 3-1, Vol 36, Information Operations (S)
- d. Electronic Warfare Planning and Integration Guide (EPIG) (S).

### *MH-53J/M PAVE LOW III*

The MH-53J/MH-53M Pave Low helicopter is a night, all-weather, special operations weapons system. The MH-53J/MH-53M is modified with an enhanced navigation system (ENS) and defensive systems. The aircraft is equipped with armor plating, dual flight controls, and redundant systems for increased survivability. With these modifications, crews can accomplish missions in a hostile environment at low altitude during total darkness and/or adverse weather over all types of terrain with pinpoint navigational accuracy. The current MH-53J aircraft are undergoing extensive modifications. The upgraded aircraft have been designated MH-53M Integrated Defensive Avionics System/Multi-mission Advanced Tactical Terminal (IDAS/MATT) aircraft.

### *Mission*

The primary mission of the MH-53J/MH-53M is to conduct clandestine infiltration, exfiltration, resupply, airdrop, and heavy-lift sling operations over a wide range of environmental conditions. The aircraft can perform a variety of other missions, including shipboard operations, radar vectoring, and search and rescue. The Pave Low can be employed in low to medium threat environments as defined by AFTTP 3-1, Vol 34.

### *Equipment*

Under the Air Force's Pave Low III E program, all Air Force H-53s were modified and designated MH-53Js. Their modifications include improved Pave Low avionics, satellite communications, shipboard



MH-53J/M PAVE LOW III

modifications, and structural improvements. All MH-53Js are modified for shipboard operations and feature automatic main rotor blade and tail rotor pylon fold. The MH-53J is also equipped with armor plating and a combination of three guns, 7.62mm miniguns or .50 caliber machine guns. It can be equipped with 27 troop seats or 14 litters. An external cargo hook has a 20,000 lb (9,000 kg) capacity. This highly modified aircraft is equipped with a rack of navigation, communication, special/auxiliary equipment defensive systems to include the following:

#### General Specifications

- a. Builder: Sikorsky
- b. Power Plant: 2 General Electric T64-GE/-100 engines
- c. Thrust: 4,330 shaft horsepower per engine
- d. Length: 88' (28 meters)
- e. Height: 25' (7.6 meters)
- f. Rotary Diameter: 72' (21.9 meters)
- g. Speed: 130 knots (110 knots for flight planning purposes)
- h. Ceiling: 16,000'
- i. Maximum Takeoff Weight: 50,000 lbs (waiver required above 46,000 lbs)
- j. Range: 600 NM (unlimited with aerial refueling)
- k. Armament: Combination of three 7.62 miniguns or .50 caliber machine guns
- l. Crew: Two officers (pilots) and four enlisted (two flight engineers and two aerial gunners)

**Enhanced Navigation System (ENS).** ENS provides a precise navigational capability that is essential for low-level, night, adverse weather operations. The MH-53J ENS consists of the following subsystems:

- a. Control Display Unit (CDU)
- b. Mission Computer (MC)
- c. Inertial Navigation Unit (INU)
- d. Global Positioning System (GPS)
- e. Video Symbology Display System (VSIDS)
- f. Bus Interface Unit (BIU)
- g. Data Transfer Set (DTS)

**MH-53M IDAS/MATT.** IDAS/MATT provides the following additional/modified equipment:

- a. Upgraded Mission Computer
- b. MATT
- c. Integrated Electronic Warfare Processor (IEWP)
- d. Digital Map System (DMS)
- e. Digital Map Computer (DMC)
- f. Digital Memory Unit (DMU)
- g. Color Multi-Functional Display (CMFD)
- h. Flight Engineer's Function Key Unit (FEFKU)
- i. Upgraded VSIDS
- j. Horizontal Situational Indicators (HSIs)
- k. Data Transfer Set (DTS)

**Other Navigation Systems.** The ENS interfaces with other systems that enhance the navigational capabilities of the helicopter. They consist of the following:

- a. The Doppler navigation system (AN/APN-221B) provides continuous Doppler-derived measurements of the helicopter's velocity vector, continuous computation of present position, and worldwide navigational guidance.
- b. The MH-53J projected map display (PMD, AN/ASN-99A) provides a moving map display showing a continuous, pictorial representation of the helicopter's horizontal position and movement relative to the terrain. The MH-53M has a colored digital map to provide the flight crew with information to aid in navigation and awareness of tactical situations. The map includes preplanned EOB, EOB updates,

translucent threat intervisibility, elevation color banding, imagery, cautions/advisories and aircraft present position.

- c. The forward-looking terrain-following/terrain-avoidance (TF/TA) radar, AN/APQ-158, is a multimode, J-band radar that provides the operators with radar video imagery of terrain features, other radar-reflective targets, and air-to-ground range data.
- d. The forward-looking infrared (FLIR, AN/AA-18), is a controllable infrared surveillance system that provides a TV video-type infrared image of terrain features and ground or airborne objects of interest. The FLIR is a passive system and detects long wavelength, radiant IR energy emitted (naturally or artificially) by any object in daylight or darkness.
- e. TACAN Navigation Set (AN/ARN-118)
- f. VOR/ILS Localizer (VOR-IOI/AN/ARN-147)
- g. C-12 Compass System

#### Special Equipment.

- a. Rescue hoist - 600 lbs capacity with approximately 240' of usable cable
- b. External cargo hook - maximum capacity 20,000 lbs
- c. Hover coupler
- d. Three IR illuminators

**Communications.** Communication capabilities consist of secure UHF, VHF, FM, HF, and SATCOM radios. The UHF radio is Have Quick II capable.

#### Defensive Systems

- a. AN/ALR-69, radar warning receiver (RWR) system, provides audio and video alerts to the flight crew when the system detects threat radar systems. The MH-53M integrated electronic warfare system prioritizes the threats and determines the appropriate countermeasures.
- b. AN/ALQ-157, infrared countermeasures (IRCM) system, is an airborne infrared



MH-53J Ropeladder Exfiltration

countermeasures system designed to protect the helicopter from specific types of heat-seeking missiles.

- c. AN/ALQ-162, electronic countermeasures (ECM) system, is a continuous-wave radar receiver/transmitter system that provides protection by means of electronic countermeasures against unfriendly fire control radar. The MH-53M integrated electronic warfare system prioritizes the threats and determines the appropriate countermeasures.
- d. AN/ALE-40 countermeasures dispenser system is a chaff and flare dispenser system designed to deceive radar and infrared (IR) guidance systems used with certain types of missiles. The MH-53M IEWP interfaces with the AN/ALE-40. The interface provides system status and control over the countermeasure dispensing. This provides the crew with three selectable levels of response (Automatic, Semi-Automatic, and Manual).
- e. AAR-47 missile warning system provides a visual indication and direction of a missile plume. The MH-53M system will automatically dispense or prompt the crews to dispense countermeasures.

#### Weapons Employment

The MH-53J Pave Low III has three weapons stations: left window, right door, and ramp. Each station

can mount an XM-218 .50 caliber machine gun or GAU-2 B/A 7.62mm minigun. A crewmember at each station manually operates the weapons.

The weapons are used primarily for self-defense and enemy suppression. The helicopter was not designed for use as an attack gunship platform. However, the helicopter weapons are capable of providing suppressive fire support for teams on the ground. Crewmembers are trained to fly L attack, dog bone, racetrack, figure 8, and spooky gun patterns as per AFTTP 3-3.34 for fire support missions. Day and night weapons training are conducted routinely with an average of two missions per week per crewmember.

The typical gun configuration is a GAU-2 B/A 7.62 minigun at the left and right station with a GAU 18 .50 cal on the tail. The minigun is normally used for soft targets and troop suppression, which requires a high rate of fire (2,000-4,000 rounds per minute). The .50-cal allows the helicopter to engage light armor and reinforced positions at greater ranges. Each weapon system is capable of mounting an Infrared Aiming Device (IRAD) which enhances target acquisition. The type of threat and mission requirements will dictate the weapons configuration.

**7.62 Miniguns.** The 7.62mm miniguns are air-cooled, link-belt fed, and have a maximum effective range of 1,500 meters with tracer burnout at 750 meters. The weapon has an adjustable rate of fire of 2,000 or 4,000 RPM. Crewmembers currently use NATO 7.62 ball ammunition. It is used for light unarmored targets and anti-personnel. The ammo complement per gun is 3,000 rounds for training and 4,500 rounds for combat missions. WRM stocks include a limited amount of 7.62 Dim Tracer.

**.50cal Machine Gun.** The .50cal machine gun is air-cooled, link-belt fed, mechanically operated and fired, and is capable of firing 750 to 850 RPM. The machine gun has a maximum effective range of 3,000 meters with a tracer burnout of 1,500 meters. For training purposes, a ball ammunition mix of 4:1 is used. For actual employment, this changes to four armor-piercing incendiary and one armor piercing incendiary tracer (APIT). Ammunition is fed to the gun from an 800-round capacity Ammunition Container

and Feed System. The ammunition complement is 500 rounds per gun for training and 800 rounds for combat missions.

### *Planning Considerations*

Once the initial planning is complete, crews go into 12 hrs of crew rest prior to flight. After crew rest, the crew needs approximately 3 hrs for final planning, crew briefing, and run-up time prior to takeoff. Most training missions are approximately 4 hrs long.

Two Pave Lows can be airlifted in a C-5 and one in a C-17. The preparation of the helicopter takes 12 hrs, and the buildup and functional flight test can take up to 72 hrs.

### *Weather Minimums*

- a. Air refueling weather minimums for VMC rendezvous is 5 NM visibility, and for radar rendezvous 1 NM.
- b. Operational weather minimums. The MH-53J, with its unique systems configuration, is capable of operating in total IMC and/or total darkness. However, at a remote site, risk is reduced greatly if operations are conducted in VMC conditions with a minimum of 200-foot ceiling and 1/2-mile visibility, and 5 to 20 percent illumination. For air refueling operations, a minimum of 500-foot ceilings and 1 mile visibility also reduces risk. If the hover coupler is required for letdown from IMC, the maximum winds for this operation is 30 knots. The hover coupler is not required if weather is greater than 100-ft ceiling and 1/4-mile visibility.

### *Altitude Restrictions*

- a. Minimum refueling altitude is 1000' AGL. For operational missions, refueling can be accomplished as low as 300' above the minimum helicopter enroute AGL altitude.
- b. Minimum enroute altitude for approved low-level areas is 50 ft. Outside low-level areas, 300 ft is the minimum enroute altitude, for noise abatement.
- c. Landing areas must be surveyed, and there must be a minimum of two rotor diameters (approximately 150') in size for training

and exercise. Operational missions require a landing area large enough for the MH-53 to land. If unable to land, the MH-53 can insert and ex-filtrate by alternate methods.

**Wind Restrictions**

- a. Training missions have a maximum of 30 knots steady state or a 20 knots gust spread with a normal crew. With an instructor in command, wind limits are 40 knots steady state or 20 knots gust spread.
- b. Operational and support missions have no minimums specified; however, 45 knots is the maximum wind for starting and stopping the rotor. Surface winds in excess of 45 knots should be avoided.

**Additional Planning Factors**

- a. Maximum aircraft gross weight: 50,000 lbs (waiver required above 46,000 lbs)
- b. Cargo area (unobstructed: Height-77”, Width-90”, Length-200”)
- c. Troop capacity: 23 troop seats or 14 litters. Additional troops and litters can be carried if floor loaded.
- d. Normal cruise: 130 knots (40,750 lbs or less), 120 knots (more than 40,750 lbs)
- e. Normal planning TF/TA cruise speed: 110 knots
- f. Normal fuel burn rate: 2,500 lbs per hour

**Crew Composition**

Six crewmembers are required for most training, exercise, or operational/contingency missions. Crewmembers include a pilot, a copilot, two flight engineers, and two aerial gunners. One of the flight engineers occupies the center cockpit seat. The center cockpit flight engineer runs the checklist and performs other cockpit duties. The other flight engineer is stationed at the right cargo door. This flight engineer scans, operates the hoist, operates the minigun or .50-cal machine gun, and performs cargo sling hookups. One aerial gunner is stationed at the left cargo window. This aerial gunner scans and operates the minigun or .50-cal machine gun.



A MH-53J is uploaded to a C-5

The other aerial gunner is stationed on the ramp and scans and operates a minigun or .50-cal machine gun. When the MH-53J/M employs the Silent Shield system, a direct support operator (DSO) supplements the crew.

**Crew Qualifications**

Not all crewmembers are qualified for all types of missions. Specialized crew qualifications include shipboard operations, formation live fire with a team on the ground, Aircrew Eye and Repertory Protection System (AERPS), night water operations, and night water low-and-slow deployment operations.

**Crew Duty Day**

- a. Training or exercises: normal crew duty day is 12 hours; maximum crew duty day is 14 hours.
- b. Operational/contingency missions: basic crew duty day is 14 hours, augmented crew (additional aircraft commander and flight engineer) is 18 hours.

**Typical Combat Load and Weight**

ITEM.....	WEIGHT
Basic aircraft (heaviest aircraft) .....	31,000
Oil .....	109
Crewmembers (6 x 250 lbs) .....	1,500
Emergency equipment .....	165
Other equipment .....	50
Operating weight (less fuel).....	32,824

Right and left miniguns . . . . . 413  
 6000 rounds 7.62mm . . . . . 390  
 .50-cal tail gun. . . . . 145  
 500 rounds of .50-cal . . . . . 155  
 Flares and chaff . . . . . 101  
 Operating weight with weapons, flares, and chaff (less fuel) . . . . . 34,028  
 Internal 600-gallon auxiliary tank (On J/M) . . . . . 287  
 Operating weight with weapons, flares, chaff, and internal auxiliary tank (less fuel) . . . . . 34,315

**Typical Mission Compositions**

The MH-53J/M can be employed using a variety of mission scenarios. A typical mission profile for a low-to-medium threat infil/exfil sortie could take the following form:

- a. Night single-ship IMC departure from a forward operating location (FOL) with 350 NM cruise to air refueling.
- b. Air refuel at medium altitude clear of clouds with not less than 1 mile visibility.

- c. Descend to terrain-following altitude of 200' IMC, crossing the border of a denied area, and fly for 200 miles to the landing site either VMC or IMC.
- d. Navigate to initial point using the best option of three navigational modes available. Update at the IP using the best of four options available for precision guidance to the landing site.



MH-53 Conducting an NEO Evacuation

	Example 1	Example 2	Example 3
Max Gross Weight	42,000	50,000	50,000
Minus combat operating weight	32,328	32,328	32,615
Payload and/or fuel	9,672	17,672	17,385
Payload on takeoff	0	5,346	1,159
Fuel JP-8	9,672	12,672	17,385
Minus run-up and taxi fuel	300	300	300
Usable fuel	9,372	12,026	16,226
Minus reserve fuel	900	900	900
Fuel available (endurance)	8,472	11,126	15,026
Endurance time	3 hrs 30 min	4 hrs 38 min	6 hrs 15 min
Cruise speed	110 KIAS	110 KIAS	110 KIAS
Distance	385 nm	510 nm	686 nm
Combat Radius	192 nm	255 nm	343 nm
Example 1: MH-53J/M with typical combat load (one ODA and two 650-gallon external tanks), max gross weight = 42,000 lbs, fuel burn rate = 2,400 lbs/hr			
Example 2: MH-53J/M with typical combat load (one ODA and two 650-gallon external tanks), max gross weight = 50,000 lbs, fuel burn rate = 2,400 lbs/hr			
Example 3: MH-53J/M with typical combat load (one ODA, two 650-gallon external tanks, and one internal 600-gallon tank), max gross weight = 50,000 lbs, fuel burn rate = 2,450 lbs/hr			

Table 5-14. Examples of Fuel Endurance and Performance

- e. Using the guidance cues, follow the navigation steering to the landing site and accomplish the approach and landing to the remote site of not less than 150' diameter. Depending on conditions, the system has the capability to accomplish a night IMC remote landing with less than 200' of visibility (single ship).
- f. On-load an exfiltration party of up to 4,236 lbs of passengers/cargo from conditions not worse than 50 degrees C at 500' pressure altitude.
- g. Reverse route and recovery to a recovery base/location in friendly territory.
- h. Low en route altitudes (down to 50') are possible given favorable combinations of ambient light infrared illuminators with night vision goggles. Night all-weather terrain following is possible down to 100'.

### *Fuel Endurance and Performance*

See Table 5-14.

### *Additional Information*

AFTTP 3-1, Vol 34 (S), contains additional/classified information.

### *CV-22 Osprey*

The CV-22, flown by the 8th Special Operations Squadron, is an Air Force-modified version of the U.S. Marine Corps MV-22. Developmental testing at Edwards Air Force Base began September 2002. The first production representative aircraft arrived at Edwards AFB in September 2005 for operational testing and aircrew training. Combat aircraft were delivered to Hurlburt Field's 1st Special Operations Wing in fiscal 2007 with an initial operational capability of six aircraft programmed for fiscal 2009.

### *Mission*

The CV-22 Osprey is a tiltrotor aircraft that combines the vertical takeoff, hover, and vertical landing qualities of a helicopter with the long-range, fuel efficiency and speed characteristics of a turboprop aircraft. The Osprey adds new capability and fills a long-standing USSOCOM requirement to conduct

long-range infiltration, exfiltration, personnel recovery, and resupply missions during night operations.

The CV-22 takes off vertically and, once airborne, the nacelles (engine and prop-rotor group) on each wing can rotate into a forward position. This versatile, self-deployable aircraft offers increased speed and range over other rotary-wing aircraft, and can perform missions that normally would require both fixed-wing and rotary-wing aircraft. The Osprey can cruise at over 230–240 mph, and has a range three times greater than the MH-53J. It is also much quieter, thereby reducing exposure to enemy threats.

The CV-22 has an advanced electronic warfare suite, a multi-mode radar which permits flight at very low altitude in zero visibility, a retractable aerial refueling probe, and four secure radios.



CV-22

### *General Characteristics*

- a. Primary function: SOF long-range infiltration, exfiltration, and resupply
- b. Builders: Bell Helicopter Textron Inc., and Boeing Company, Defense and Space Group
- c. Power Plant: Two Rolls Royce-Allison AE1107C turboshaft engines
- d. Thrust: 6,200 shaft horsepower per engine
- e. Length: 57 feet, 4 inches (17.4 meters)
- f. Height: 22 feet, 1 inch (6.73 meters)
- g. Wingspan: 84 feet, 7 inches (25.8 meters)
- h. Rotary Diameter: 38 feet (11.6 meters)
- i. Speed: 277 mph (241 knots) (cruising speed)
- j. Ceiling: 25,000 feet (7,620 meters)



CV-22s in formation over Edwards AFB

- k. Maximum Vertical Takeoff Weight: 52,870 pounds (23,982 kilograms)
- l. Maximum Rolling Takeoff Weight: 60,500 pounds (27,443 kilograms)
- m. Range: 1,500 nautical miles with internal auxiliary fuel tanks and no refueling. More than 2,500 nautical miles is possible with one aerial refueling and auxiliary tanks.
- n. Crew: Four (pilot, copilot and two enlisted flight engineers)

### ***U-28A***

The U-28A utility aircraft, flown by the 319th Special Operations Squadron, provides intra-theater support for special operations forces. The U-28A is the Air Force variant of the Pilatus PC-12 and was selected for its versatile performance characteristics and ability to operate from short and unimproved runway surfaces. The U-28A is also certified to land on dirt and grass strips. The aircraft is equipped with weather radar and a suite of advanced communications and navigation gear. This single-engine utility aircraft has a crew of two, but can be flown by one pilot.



U-28A

The turboprop U-28A can operate from shorter runways than a C-130, and can carry a payload of up to nearly 3,000 pounds. Due to its efficient design and the use of a single engine, the U-28A's direct operating cost is about a third less than a comparable multi-engine aircraft and nearly half that of the nearest comparable jet.

### ***General Characteristics***

- a. Primary Function: Intra-theater support for special operations forces
- b. Builder: Pilatus
- c. Power Plant: One Pratt & Whitney PT6A-67B turboprop
- d. Thrust: 1605 shaft horsepower flat-rated to 1200 shp.
- e. Length: 47 feet, 3 inches
- f. Height: 14 feet
- g. Wingspan: 53 feet, 3 inches
- h. Max Cruise Speed: 270 knots true airspeed
- i. Max Payload: 2,973 lbs.
- j. Ceiling: 30,000 feet
- k. Maximum Takeoff Weight: 9,920 lbs.
- l. Ground Roll: 1,475 ft. at max takeoff weight
- m. Range: 1,513 nautical miles
- n. Crew: Two pilots.

## MQ-1 Predator

The MQ-1 Predator, flown by the 3rd Special Operations Squadron, is a medium-altitude, long-endurance, remotely piloted aircraft with associated personnel and equipment. The MQ-1's primary mission is interdiction and armed reconnaissance against critical, perishable targets. The Predator can operate from a 5,000 by 75 feet (1,524 meters by 23 meters), hard surface runway with clear line-of-sight.



MQ-1 Predator

The MQ-1 Predator carries the Multi-spectral Targeting System with inherent AGM-114 Hellfire missile targeting capability, and integrates electro-optical, infrared, laser designator and laser illuminator into a single sensor package. The aircraft can employ two laser-guided Hellfire anti-tank missiles with the MTS ball.

The Predator is a system, not just an aircraft. A fully operational system consists of four aircraft (with sensors), a ground control station, a Predator Primary Satellite Link (PPSL), and approximately 55 personnel for deployed 24-hour operations. The major components can be deployed for worldwide operations on relatively short notice. Predator aircraft are disassembled and loaded into "coffins." The ground control system is transportable in a C-130 (or larger) transport aircraft.

The basic crew for the Predator is one pilot and two sensor operators. They fly the aircraft from inside the ground control station via a C-Band line-of-sight data link or a Ku-Band satellite data link for beyond

line-of-sight flight. The aircraft is equipped with a color nose camera (generally used by the pilot for flight control), a day variable-aperture TV camera, a variable-aperture infrared camera (for low light/night), and a synthetic aperture radar for looking through smoke, clouds or haze. The cameras produce full motion video while the SAR produces still frame radar images. The ground data terminal antenna provides line-of-sight communications for takeoff and landing. The PPSL provides over-the-horizon communications for the aircraft.

An alternate method of employment, Remote Split Operations, employs a smaller version of the GCS called the Launch and Recovery GCS. The LRCS conducts takeoff and landing operations at the forward deployed location while the CONUS based GCS conducts the mission via extended communications links.

The aircraft also includes an ARC-210 radio, an APX-100 IFF/SIF with Mode 4, an upgraded turbo-charged engine and glycol-weeping "wet wings" for ice mitigation. The latest upgrade includes fuel injection, longer wings, dual alternators and other improvements.

### General Characteristics

- a. Primary Function: Armed reconnaissance, airborne surveillance and target acquisition
- b. Contractor: General Atomics Aeronautical Systems Incorporated
- c. Power Plant: Rotax 914 four cylinder engine producing 101 horsepower
- d. Length: 27 feet (8.22 meters)
- e. Height: 6.9 feet (2.1 meters)
- f. Wingspan: 48.7 feet (14.8 meters)
- g. Weight: 1,130 pounds ( 512 kilograms) empty; max takeoff weight 2,250 pounds (1,020 kg)
- h. Speed: Cruise speed around 84 mph (70 knots), up to 135 mph
- i. Range: up to 400 nautical miles (454 miles)
- j. Ceiling: up to 25,000 feet (7,620 meters)
- k. Fuel Capacity: 665 pounds (100 gallons)
- l. Payload: 450 pounds (204 kilograms)
- m. Armament: 2 x Hellfire AT Missiles

## MQ-9 REAPER

The MQ-9 Reaper is a medium-to-high altitude, long endurance remotely piloted aircraft system. The MQ-9's primary mission is as a persistent hunter-killer against emerging targets to achieve joint force commander objectives. The MQ-9's alternate mission is to act as an intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance asset, employing sensors to provide real-time data to commanders and intelligence specialists at all levels.



An MQ-9 Reaper takes off from Joint Base Balad, Iraq.

The typical system consists of several aircraft, a ground control station, communication equipment and links, spares, and personnel who can be a mix of active duty and contractor personnel. The crew for the MQ-9 is a pilot and a sensor operator, who operate the aircraft from a remotely located GCS. To meet combatant commanders' requirements, the MQ-9 delivers tailored capabilities using mission kits that may contain various weapons and sensor payload combinations.

The MQ-9 baseline system has a robust sensor suite for targeting. Imagery is provided by an infrared sensor, a color/monochrome daylight TV and an image-intensified TV. The video from each of the imaging sensors can be viewed as separate video streams or fused with the IR sensor video. The laser rangefinder/designator provides the capability to

precisely designate targets for laser-guided munitions. Synthetic aperture radar will enable Joint Direct Attack Munitions targeting. The aircraft is also equipped with a color nose camera, generally used by the pilot for flight control.

Each MQ-9 aircraft can be disassembled into main components and loaded into a container for air deployment worldwide in Air Force airlift assets such as the C-130. The MQ-9 air vehicle operates from standard U.S. airfields.

### General Characteristics

- a. Primary Function: Unmanned hunter/killer weapon system
- b. Contractor: General Atomics Aeronautical Systems, Inc.
- c. Power Plant: Honeywell TPE331-10GD turboprop engine
- d. Thrust: 900 shaft horsepower maximum
- e. Wingspan: 66 feet (20.1 meters)
- f. Length: 36 feet (11 meters)
- g. Height: 12.5 feet (3.8 meters)
- h. Weight: 4,900 pounds (2,223 kilograms) empty
- i. Maximum takeoff weight: 10,500 pounds (4,760 kilograms)
- j. Fuel Capacity: 4,000 pounds (602 gallons)
- k. Payload: 3,750 pounds (1,701 kilograms)
- l. Speed: cruise speed around 230 miles per hour, (200 knots)
- m. Range: 3,682 miles (3,200 nautical miles)
- n. Ceiling: up to 50,000 feet (15,240 meters)
- o. Armament: Combination of AGM-114 Hellfire missiles, GBU-12 Paveway II and GBU-38 Joint Direct Attack Munitions.
- p. Crew (remote): Two (pilot and sensor operator)
- q. Unit Cost: \$53.5 million (includes four aircraft with sensors) (fiscal 2006 dollars)
- r. Initial operating capability: expected in fiscal 2008

## Special Tactics Squadrons (STS)

**S**pecial Tactics Squadrons are fast-reaction, rapidly deployable Air Force units comprising Combat Control Team (CCT), Pararescue (PJ), and Special Operations Weather Team (SOWT) operators and specialized mission support personnel. STSs are organized, trained, and equipped to conduct SO core tasks during high-risk combat operations where the effective integrations of airpower and/or recovery of personnel and equipment are imperative to mission success. STSs support SOF commanders as well as enable the air component commander's global strike, global mobility, and global response operations by providing unique capabilities. These capabilities include the coordination, integration, and synchronization of air and space power as a tactical enabling force (assault zone survey, assessment, establishment, and control; terminal attack control; direct action; environmental and special reconnaissance; and austere weather operations) as well as personnel recovery, battlefield trauma care, and hardware destruction or recovery. Teams are capable of operating independently in permissive or non-permissive environments, or as augmentation to other special operations elements in hostile environments.

### *Mission*

The Special Tactics mission is to provide the Joint Force Commander with austere air traffic control; assault zone (landing zone/drop zone) survey, assessment, establishment, and control; close air support using strike aircraft and gunship missions; weather observations; environmental reconnaissance; personnel recovery; and advanced trauma care.

### *Specific Employment*

Special Tactics Teams (STTs) operate worldwide, in a ground role with joint and combined special operations task forces. SOWTs conduct environmental reconnaissance; collecting critical meteorological, oceanographic, geographic and hydrologic information and conduct austere weather operations;

generating mission tailored forecasts and assessing environmental impacts on current and planned special operations.

STTs can be employed in support of the full range of special operations core tasks to include direct action, special reconnaissance, unconventional warfare, foreign internal defense, combat search and rescue, personnel/equipment recovery, humanitarian assistance, and civil affairs. Combat Controllers can establish landing zones at unprepared sites, semi-prepared sites, and even international airports; once in place, CCT provide FAA-certified air traffic control services for all aircraft within their designated airspace. When attached to USAF Contingency Response Groups, these teams deliver air traffic capability to the Air Force's "Open the Airbase" concept of operation.



Special Tactics Rescue All Terrain Vehicle (RATTV)

### *Deployment*

STTs can be deployed by airlift, sealift, or overland means. STT manpower and personnel are tailored to the mission. To airlift a capable 18-man STT to a forward base requires one C-17. However, the force also has smaller, modular force packages that can be airlifted to the objective area on a C-130 or helicopter, mission dependent. Deployment can be worldwide to a main base or forward operating location. Teams will require host support at the deployed location.

ST has two core combat modular packages differing slightly in mission capability and mix of personnel and equipment. One is composed of 18 Combat Controllers, designed to conduct the full range of Combat Control missions. The other, comprising 12 Combat Controllers and 6 Pararescuemen, has limited Combat Control mission capability, and good personnel recovery capability. Once deployed, the team leader can tailor exact team composition and equipment to meet specific employment mission requirements. SOWT deploy with their respective Army Special Operations units (typically, four SOWTs per Special Forces Group).

### Employment

STTs may be tactically employed directly from their home station or from deployed locations. ST forces can be employed as stand-alone units or combined with other special operations/conventional forces into a joint team. STTs may be employed using a variety of tactical methods including:

- a. Static line or military freefall parachute
- b. SCUBA, small boat, or amphibious means
- c. Overland using mounted or dismounted techniques
- d. Airland via fixed-wing or rotary-wing aircraft
- e. Airmobile procedures, including fastrope, rope ladder, rappel.

An STT is the basic tactical element for ST forces, but its size depends on mission requirements. A CSAR team typically comprises two or three Pararescuemen and one Combat Controller. When attached to a U.S. Army Special Forces ODA or SEAL platoon to provide fire support expertise, a single Combat Controller can perform the mission if he has a Joint Terminal Attack Controller (JTAC) certification. ST Survey teams consist of one to four Combat Controllers, and conduct surveys as tasked, with security typically arranged by the unit requesting the assault zone survey. For austere airfield establishment and control, four to eight Combat



Motorcycles and all-terrain vehicles provide STS personnel rapid mobility throughout the airfield environment.

Controllers can conduct the mission, depending on complexity. SOWTs operate as single operators attached to Army Special Operations units or STTs to conduct environmental reconnaissance or austere weather operations. Teams tasked for recovery missions will comprise a mix of Pararescuemen and Combat Controllers, the total number being mission-dependent.

### Mission Tasks

- a. Provide terminal guidance and air traffic control for assault zones (AZ). An AZ may be an established airfield, landing strip, unimproved site, helicopter landing zone, or drop zone. The team can:
  - Establish ground-to-air communications
  - Coordinate AZ activities with the ground force commander
  - Perform weather observations
  - Provide positive control of personnel and equipment within the airhead area to include control of Forward Arming and Refueling Point (FARP) operations
- b. Select, evaluate, survey, and establish AZs. The Special Tactics Team can:
  - Clear, mark, and operate the AZ
  - Establish enroute and terminal navigation aids and beacons

- Conduct reconnaissance and surveillance missions
  - Support selected regional survey team (RST) missions
  - Remove obstacles to flight for follow-on operations
- c. Provide medical care, recovery, and evacuation. The STT can:
- Provide combat emergency medical and trauma care
  - Operate specialized personal locator systems
  - Operate combat medical evacuation vehicles
  - Lead search-and-rescue (SAR) security team operations
  - Conduct casualty transload and evacuation operations
  - Conduct sensitive recovery operations
- d. Conduct, coordinate, and plan fire support operations. The STT can:
- Control CAS aircraft
  - Control naval gunfire
  - Control artillery and mortar fires
  - Operate laser targeting equipment
  - Report battlefield damage assessment
- e. Conduct UW and FID activities. The team can advise, train, and assist allied or indigenous personnel in:
- Assault zone, communications, and other special operations
  - Combat medical and related casualty treatment procedures
  - Combat search and rescue operations
  - Other Special Tactics/operations related procedures
  - Collecting and reporting limited weather observations
- f. Conduct environmental reconnaissance; collect and report meteorological, oceanographic, geographic and hydrologic information to assess threats and suitability.
- Collect and report surface weather conditions
  - Collect and report coastal or near-littoral conditions
- Collect and report snowpack and assess avalanche threat
  - Collect and report on riverine systems and assess flood threat
  - Collect and report on terrain conditions
  - Collect and report upper air soundings
- g. Conduct austere weather operations.
- Generate mission execution forecasts
  - Generate nowcasts
  - Generate environmental impact analysis
  - Establish and manage limited observation networks

### *Basic Planning Considerations*

- a. STTs deploy with the minimum equipment and supplies needed to complete the mission. They are normally equipped to operate for up to 72 hours without resupply. Operations in excess of 72 hours require resupply of consumables, including additional equipment, batteries, fuel, water, and rations.
- b. Operations in excess of 72 hours or multiple ST taskings are considered sustained operations, and Special Tactics Operations Center (STOC) and Logistics force module must be deployed along with the employing teams to support their command/control, planning, and mission support requirements. The STOC should be deployed to the nearest available staging or operations base with access to the tactical teams area of operations.
- c. Mission effectiveness is highly dependent upon accurate, complete, real-time intelligence. ST planners must have access to all intelligence sources.
- d. The time required for STTs to prepare for a mission varies with the complexity and length of the mission. As a rule of thumb, a tactical team requires at least 12 hours to provide adequate pre-mission time to conduct final planning, brief team members and decision-makers, and ready equipment. Any preliminary mission planning or preparation time must be added to this 12-hour figure.

## Combat Aviation Advisors

### *Mission*

The 6th Special Operations Squadron (6 SOS) is a Combat Aviation Advisory (CAA) unit with a mission to assess, train, advise, and assist foreign aviation forces in airpower employment, sustainment, and force integration. The squadron performs this mission across the operational continuum, but has specialized applications in three operating arenas: FID, UW, and coalition support.

The 6 SOS mission includes advising combatant commanders, civilian agencies, and foreign aviation units on planning and integrating foreign air operations into theater campaign plans, contingencies, and other joint and multinational activities. The mission set addresses airpower tactical employment, aircraft maintenance, air base supply, munitions, ground safety, life support, personal survival, airbase ground defense, command, control, communications, and computers (C4), and other sustainment functions supporting combat air operations.

### *Operating Rationale*

6 SOS training and advisory capabilities are primarily relevant to the Joint Force Special Operations Component Commander/Joint Special Operations Task Force Commander and to the Joint Force Air Component Commander for purposes of integrating foreign aviation forces into combined theater air operations during contingencies and larger-scale theater campaigns. In this respect, combat aviation advisors function as “coalition airpower enablers.”

- a. During war and certain contingency operations, CAA capabilities that promote safety and interoperability within the coalition extend the flexibility and range of options available to the JFC. These capabilities are particularly relevant when the total air effort requires foreign air support augmentation or when unilateral U.S. combat air actions are infeasible or inappropriate.
- b. Strengthening the airpower capabilities of friendly and allied nations through training

and advisory assistance can reduce foreign dependence on the United States for certain forms of air support, such as airlift, tactical insertion/extraction, resupply, and CSAR.

- c. Combat aviation advisors offer the JFC and Combat Air Forces (CAF) a practical means of maintaining contact over extended periods of time with foreign air force leadership and government authorities to open and maintain channels of communication and coordination for future contingencies. Close contact with foreign air force commanders, for instance, is crucial in obtaining or coordinating support and cooperation for U.S. conventional or special operations activities conducted abroad. 6 SOS advisors can assist the CAF in pursuing military-to-military contacts with foreign aviation forces in such areas as capabilities assessments, bilateral exercise planning and execution, information exchanges, and unit exchange training events.
- d. Small unit deployments by training and advisory personnel supporting the Combatant Commander’s engagement strategy offer a politically and economically feasible means to show commitment, lend credibility to our alliances and U.S. overseas interests, enhance regional stability, and at the same time provide an immediate response capability.
- e. Combat aviation advisors support various military commands and civilian agencies in such areas as airpower assessments, site surveys, technical advisory services, and certain forms of training and instruction.

### *Concept Of Operations*

6 SOS operations are inherently and predominantly joint in nature. All own-unit training is conducted in accordance with the unit’s mission-essential task list. In selecting training events, the squadron seeks to maximize opportunities to train in a joint environment and to acquire competency in the tasks the

squadron must be able to perform to meet the needs of regional combatant commanders.

- a. When tasked, 6 SOS personnel deploy, collocate with HN aviation elements at a squadron, wing, or headquarters level, and train and/or advise counterpart personnel in airpower employment and sustainment. Training and advisory assistance is conducted at both the operational and tactical levels.
- b. 6 SOS combat aviation advisors do not employ with aircraft. Aircrews fly with foreign counterparts at the deployment location, using HN aircraft, to assess capabilities and determine current levels of proficiency and safety. 6 SOS instructors may then train HN aviation personnel in required tactics, techniques, and procedures—again, using HN aircraft—for joint and combined warfare.
- c. All training and advisory efforts involving flying are preceded by an assessment of the airworthiness and safety of the HN unit's aircraft and crews. The assessment is required for familiarization with HN aviation capabilities and procedures prior to commencement of combined operations. It is also required as a basis for conducting risk analysis and risk management procedures, and for estimating the potential of combined interoperability.
- d. 6 SOS tactical flying training will, in some cases, be required to bring HN aviation forces to the point where they can be advised in airpower applications supporting theater and/or air campaign objectives. The basic steps in this process are sequential—assess, train, advise, assist, and integrate.
- e. 6 SOS tactical aircrews may be required to fly with HN counterparts on certain missions to provide the needed margin of safety and reliability, especially when supporting U.S. or U.S.-advised forces.

### **Employment**

The 6 SOS supports the Geographic Combatant Commander, Joint Force Commander (JFC), and subordinate component commands throughout

the range of military operations, from military operations other than war and contingency operations to major regional conflict. 6 SOS advisory and training operations are primarily aimed at helping foreign friends and allies employ and sustain their own aviation resources, not to conduct operations for them. The principal tactical objective of 6 SOS combat aviation advisory operations is to facilitate the availability, reliability, safety, and interoperability of foreign aviation forces. Operations, in both the conventional and special operations arenas, primarily focus on hands-on, adaptive training and advisory support geared to practical applications in host countries. Squadron advisory capabilities primarily focus on fixed- and rotary-wing special operations oriented airlift for CSAR; tactical assault; and aerial insertion, extraction, and resupply. The squadron also maintains the capability to function in a direct-execution role if required. The following describes each element of the mission set.

- a. Aviation assessments are carried out primarily in support of Geographic Combatant Commanders and subordinate commands and for other key agencies and departments of the U.S. Government. Assessments focus on foreign aviation capabilities and limitations, specifically aircrew capability and safety, aircraft airworthiness, and critical resource availability, resource sustainability, and operational potential.
- b. Aviation training enables foreign aviation units to accomplish a variety of missions, technical functions, and skills. Training covers a variety of product sub-sets, including operational tactics, techniques, and procedures in such areas as search and rescue, air-ground interface, aircraft maintenance, survival, and air base defense. Training, as a key task, is neither time nor situation specific. However, appropriately funded training can be used to close specific gaps in foreign aviation skills and bring them up to levels of competency where they can be advised on how to employ their acquired capabilities. Combat aviation advisors do not train foreign personnel in basic military skills.

- c. Aviation advisory support enables foreign aviation forces to employ and sustain their own resources within the context of specific times, places, and operational situations. Advising includes such product sub-sets as real-world mission planning, tactical employment, sustainment methods, basing concepts, C4 systems, and uses of airpower (how to employ airpower as opposed to how to operate airplanes).
- d. As with U.S. Army Special Forces, combat aviation advisors can assist foreign aviation forces in executing specific tasks, operations, and missions through direct participation in tactical operations and events, as well as through technical and operational means, including training, advising, and logistics support. With appropriate direction and authority, 6 SOS combat aviation advisors can also furnish Joint Force Commanders direct aviation support employing a variety of USAF and non-USAF aircraft.
- e. 6 SOS advisors facilitate force integration by bringing all other key tasks (assessing, training, advising, and assisting) together in a coordinated effort to draw foreign aviation forces into joint and combined multinational operations supporting theater campaigns and contingencies. The object is to create joint and combined battlefields for theater operations and contingencies.

### *Specialized Training Characteristics*

The 6 SOS trains, plans, and conducts operations so as to maximize the effectiveness of advisory skills, which include several specialized features of the organization—foreign language capability, political and cultural sensitivity, area orientation, tailored force packaging, mission-specific training, and competency in nonstandard aircraft and aviation support programs.

- a. Most squadron personnel are volunteers who come into the unit as qualified instructors in a particular Air Force Specialty Code. Approximately 6 months of advisor-related, individual,

and team-oriented training equips these individuals with area orientation, field craft, and “move, shoot, and communicate” ground operating skills that prepare them to function successfully in the joint, multinational, and interagency arenas. Achieving and maintaining mission-ready status in the 6 SOS entails extensive training in such areas as advanced weapons, personal survival, political-military affairs, combat aviation advisory doctrine, security assistance law, academic instructor methods, area/theater orientation, and a foreign language.

- b. The seasoned combat aviation advisor is distinguished by such attributes as cultural and political astuteness, adaptability to field conditions, and an in-depth knowledge of U.S. and foreign military command and control structures. The professional advisor can plan, execute, and recover in a variety of mission scenarios with little assistance, and do it all within the spirit and intent of current operating instructions and public laws governing operations with foreign military forces.
- c. Squadron personnel undergo extensive training prior to being certified as “mission ready.” This includes training and education in a variety of individual skills such as cross-cultural communications, regional area orientation, battle space command and control, and conflict analysis. Additionally, Integrated Skills Training (IST) is administered to all squadron personnel prior to achieving mission-ready status.

### *Organization*

The 6 SOS is assigned to the 1st Special Operations Group, which in turn reports to the 1st Special Operations Wing (1 SOW). The 1 SOW reports to HQ AFSOC. These organizations are located at Hurlburt Field, Florida.

- a. The 6SOS is organized in garrison as regionally-oriented flights aligned under an operations officer and a squadron commander. For overseas deployment, the squadron is organized

around Operational Aviation Detachments “A” and “B” (OAD-A and OAD-B).

- b. The OAD-A, or A team, is the basic 6 SOS tactical deployment module for combat aviation advisory operations. It is structured around a (notional) 13-person, multidisciplined, language-qualified team focused on assessing, training, advising, and assisting foreign aviation units.
- c. The OAD-B, or B team, is the basic infrastructure support element for deployed operations. It is organized around a (notional) 10-person support team focused on providing C3, logistics, administrative, and medical support to one or more deployed OAD-A teams.
- d. The OAD-A and OAD-B teams are specially tailored in both size and composition to meet specific mission needs.

Table 5-15. Aviation FID OAD-A Composition

OAD-A Typical Functional Areas	OAD-A Notional Load
Pilots	3 Pilots
Aircrew, non-pilot	3 Maintenance
Maintenance	2 Special Tactics
Special Tactics	2 Aircrew
Communications	1 Logistics
Logistics	1 Security Police
Intelligence	1 Medic (augmented resource)
Civil Affairs or PSYOP	12 Total (13 with Medic)

Table 5-16. Aviation FID OAD-B Composition

OAD-B Composition
Team Leader / Mission Commander
Operations Officer
Flight Surgeon (augmented resource)
Medic (augmented resource)
Communications (augmented resource)
Administrative Specialist
Maintenance Officer
Logistics Officer
Plans Officer
Intelligence Officer

### Operating Arenas

Although 6 SOS capabilities can be employed throughout the range of military operations, CAA teams have specialized applications in three principal operating arenas where employment of foreign aviation forces is of direct interest to Combatant Commanders—foreign internal defense, unconventional warfare, and coalition support.

#### Foreign Internal Defense (FID)

FID is the total political, economic, informational, and military assistance the United States provides to a friend or ally to help them deal with the internal problems of subversion, lawlessness, and insurgency. The aviation aspect of FID is essentially one of training and advising host-nation aviation forces in the sustained use of airpower to help their governments deal with these internal threats. Host Nation programs in the arena are often referred to as internal defense and development plans or strategies. The key term here is internal

- a. FID, by nature a joint interagency activity, is established under U.S. public law as a principal USSOCOM task. Advisory assistance and training are major components of FID. Although the term FID is widely understood throughout the U.S. government, its use is largely restricted to DoD organizations.
- b. Commander, USSOCOM, has designated AFSOC as the proponent for the aviation portion of FID, with functions and responsibilities described in Appendix C-3, USSOCOM Directive 10-1. AFSOC/CC has in turn, designated the 6 SOS as the primary organization to plan, coordinate, and manage aviation-FID activities.
- c. Operations associated with aviation-FID primarily include support to host nation counter-insurgency and counternarcotics programs. Aviation FID is intended to function as a complement to other special operations forces involving ground, maritime, and riverine advisory assistance.

### *Unconventional Warfare (UW)*

As defined in Joint Pub 1-02, UW is a broad spectrum of military and paramilitary operations, normally of long duration, predominantly conducted by indigenous or surrogate forces that are organized, trained, equipped, supported, and directed in varying degrees by an external source. It includes guerilla warfare and other direct offensive, low-visibility, clandestine, or covert operations, as well as the indirect activities of subversion, sabotage, intelligence activities, and evasion and escape.

- a. There are several major aspects to UW. One aspect involves support to insurgency, i.e. guerrilla warfare. Another aspect includes actions aimed at preparing the engagement arena prior to, or in conjunction with, the introductions of main battle forces. These are “direct, offensive actions,” undertaken to disrupt and isolate enemy resources and nodes, and to build friendly command, control, communication, and computer intelligence and escape and evasion nets supporting theater campaign objectives.
- b. 6 SOS UW support includes training and advising foreign aviation forces supporting friendly indigenous assets located in the engagement arena (partisan forces, for example) through aerial insertion, extraction, and resupply, possibly from a third-country sanctuary.

### *Coalition Support*

Other than quick, one-time contingencies, any significant and sustained U.S. military action overseas is likely to be conducted under some type of coalition arrangement. Coalition support may be conducted in different conflict arenas, including FID contingency actions and regional warfare. Specialized tasks are involved. Whereas conventional forces conduct coalition warfare, the 6 SOS is organized and trained to operate along the seams of contact between U.S. and coalition forces—to keep the coalitions connected at the tactical level. This requires 6 SOS combat aviation advisors to engage coalition aviation forces with training and advisory assis-

tance at the tactical level, in counterpart aircraft, in tactical environments.

- a. Coalition support activities of the 6 SOS encompasses actions to facilitate integration and/or coordination of foreign aviation forces into combined operations supporting mutual campaign objectives. As a logical extension of these actions, squadron personnel may be required to assist foreign coalition partners in operational-level planning and force integration. 6 SOS personnel can also assist U.S. combatant commanders, component forces and civilian agencies in planning and integrating foreign air support into theater campaign plans, contingencies, and other joint multinational activities.
- b. Coalition support includes advisory liaison functions to promote and test safety and interoperability; facilitate area defense coordination and airspace deconfliction; help integrate foreign aviation efforts into combined air campaign planning; increase tactical effectiveness of foreign aviation resources; and maintain vital coordination links between foreign aviation units and joint, combined air tasking authorities.

### *Tasking*

Formal requests for 6 SOS support should be channeled through the Combatant Commander in whose areas of responsibility the support would take place. These requests are forwarded, in turn, through the theater Special Operations Command to USSOCOM and HQ AFSOC.

Inquiries regarding 6 SOS capabilities and availability should be directed through USSOCOM to HQ AFSOC. Formal requests for 6 SOS support of security assistance-funded mobile training teams are handled in accordance with current directives and regulations governing security assistance. These requests are channeled through USSOCOM to HQ AFSOC. A Joint Chiefs of Staff deployment order (JCS tasking) is usually required for deployments involving contact with foreign military forces.

## Air Mobility Command (AMC) C-17 SOLL II

### Mission

The C-17 SOLL II forces from the Air Mobility Command (AMC) conduct clandestine formation or single-ship intrusion of hostile territory to provide highly reliable, self-contained, precision airdrop/airland of personnel and equipment. The assumed mission concept will be day/night, low level, adverse weather, without the use of external aids. Minimum lighting, minimum communications, deceptive course changes, and preplanned avoidance of enemy radar/air defenses and populated areas enhance mission success. The C-17 is well suited for many special operations applications due to its load carrying capability, ability to operate into short runway operations (5,000'), and its worldwide signature. The aircraft operates in a low-threat environment as defined by AFTTP 3-1.

### Employment

Due to OPSEC considerations, rapid response requirements, and/or lack of suitable forward operating bases, many C-17 SOLL II missions will require long-range employment flights. Secure SATCOM and line-of-sight radios provide necessary command and control communications. Landfall points are selected to minimize detection by hostile forces.



Iraqi Truck Ready for Upload to a C-17



C-17 Airdrop

Precise navigation positioning after extended overwater flights is required. On these long missions, it is imperative both the aircrew and user fatigue are minimized so human errors are reduced during critical phases of the mission, such as the low-level portion and objective area operations.

### SOLL II Capabilities

- a. Crew consists of three pilots, two navigators, two loadmasters, and two flight engineers.
- b. Minimum Flight Altitudes. Night VMC routes, legs, or segments will be flown at 500' above the highest obstruction within 3 NM of route centerline.
- c. Airland Operations. Landing zones may be marked with a minimum of NO LIGHTS or a Box In One. Weather minimums are VFR.

### Planning Considerations

The nature of the missions listed above results in the C-17 SOLL II mission being highly dependent upon accurate, complete, all-source, real-time intelligence. Table 5-17 provides more detail.

Table 5-17. C-17 SOLL II Planning Considerations

Mission	Criteria
Low-level Infil/Exfil	C-17 SOLL II forces are required to penetrate hostile or sensitive airspace under blacked out conditions either single-ship or in formation. Low-level routes are constructed to minimize detection. Strict navigational tolerances and terrain avoidance capabilities are critical factors for mission success. SOLL II forces will fly low-level route at as high an altitude as the threat and other detection factors will allow.
Airdrop	SOLL II forces will be utilized to conduct clandestine airdrops of personnel, supplies, and equipment into very small, unmarked water and land DZs at night during blacked out conditions. These airdrops may be conducted either single ship, in formation, or in concert with other aircraft. Drops may be conducted at low altitudes (e.g., 300-1,500' AGL) or from the aircraft. Medium altitudes up to FL 250 SOLL II airdrops are typically conducted in a non-permissive ground threat environment and are required to be able to navigate to a precision airborne release point without the assistance of external aids. Due to ground threats and various OPSEC considerations, multiple passes on a DZ are not desirable due to adverse impact on mission success. Airdrops may be on unmarked drop zones or configured with IR markings. These airdrops may be conducted with or without NVGs, depending on the ground tactical situation. During visual airdrops, and while operating on NVGs, the pilots must be capable of independently determining aircraft altitude, airspeed, heading, and course deviations, as well as visual formation position. SOLL II crews are also required to conduct clandestine, single pass, low altitude combination airdrops of boats and personnel.
Airland	SOLL II forces are required to conduct self-contained precision approaches to minimum covert light conditions and prepared or unprepared landing zones. While on approach, SOLL II aircrews must be capable of independently determining if the landing zone is clear of obstructions, which may be replaced by hostile forces. Throughout the approach, and especially during the critical final phase, both pilots must be capable of independently determining the aircraft barometric and radar altitude, indicated airspeed, ground speed, aircraft descent rate, heading, and course deviations while operating on NVGs. The entire approach and landing must be accomplished without displaying any overt external lights.
Ground Operations	SOLL II forces must be capable of safe, rapid clandestine off-/on-loads of personnel, equipment, vehicles and other cargo without displaying any overt lights. Mission scenario may require the SOLL II forces to conduct blacked out hot refueling operations with other aircraft.

### Crew Duty Day

- a. **Basic Crew.** Crew duty day varies for basic crews and augmented crews. Crew duty day for a basic crew is 16 hours, providing no tactical events and no air refueling is accomplished after 14 hours.
- b. **Augmented Crew.** Crew duty day for an augmented crew is 24 hours, providing no tactical events and no air refueling is accomplished after 18 hours.

# Chapter 6. U.S. Marine Corps Special Operations Forces

## Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command (MARSOC)

Established February 24, 2006, U.S. Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command is the Marine Corps component of USSOCOM. MARSOC is headquartered at Camp Lejeune, N.C., and will include approximately 2,500 marines, sailors and civilian employees.

### Mission

The mission of the Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command is to train, organize, and equip; and when directed by CDRUS-SOCOM, deploy task-organized, scalable, and responsive Marine Corps SOF worldwide in support of combatant commanders and other agencies.

MARSOC performs the Title 10 functions of manning, organizing, training, and equipping Marine special operations forces (MARSOF) to accomplish their mission. MARSOC headquarters is responsible for identifying Marine special operations-

unique requirements; developing MARSOF tactics, techniques, procedures, and doctrine; and executing assigned missions in accordance with designated conditions and standards.



### Organization

A Marine Corps Major General commands MARSOC with a supporting staff designed to be compatible in all functional areas with both USSOCOM and HQMC.

Although the MARSOC Headquarters is a non-deployable unit, the MARSOC commander and members of his staff may augment as needed to deploy in support of USSOCOM tasks to form, deploy, and employ a Joint Special Operations Task Force.

The MARSOC structure includes a headquarters and five subordinate units: the Marine Special Operations Advisor Group (MSOAG), two Marine Special Operations Battalions (1st MSOB at Camp

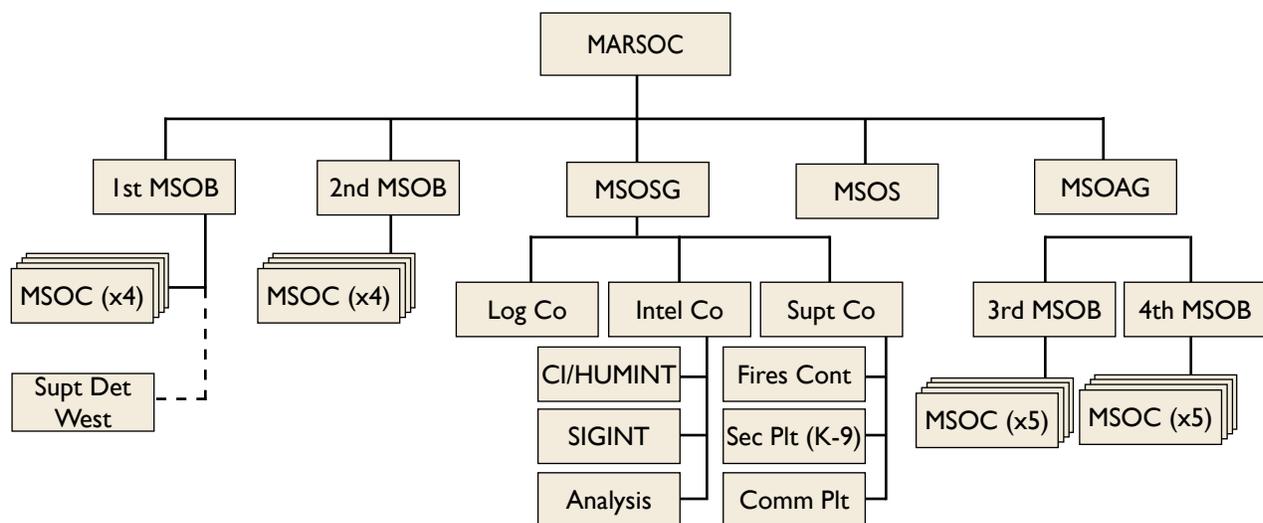


Figure 6-1. MARSOC Organization

Pendleton, California, and 2d MSOB at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina), the Marine Special Operations Support Group (MSOSG), and the Marine Special Operations School (MSOS).



### *Heritage, History, and Milestones*

The spirit of MARSOC can be traced back to the “Shores of Tripoli” where, on 27 April 1805, Marine Lt. Presley N. O’Bannon led a force of marines and mercenaries across 600 miles of Libyan Desert to attack the fortress at Derna, Tripoli.

**WWII Origins.** During WWII, two units were created that would serve as more direct forbearers of what is now MARSOC: Marine Raider Battalions and Amphibious Reconnaissance.

- a. The first Marine Raiders were elite units established to conduct amphibious light infantry warfare and operate behind the lines. The Raiders were created by an order from President Franklin D. Roosevelt.
- b. Amphibious Reconnaissance began as a small group of two officers and twenty enlisted men. Formed as the Observation Group of the 1st Marine Division to support the invasion of North Africa, the group was expanded to 98 marines in 1943, was renamed the Amphibious Reconnaissance Company (ARC), and deployed to the Pacific Theatre. The ARC eventually grew to more than 300 personnel and participated in amphibious landings until the end of the WWII and throughout the Korean War.

**Force Reconnaissance.** After the Korean War, the Marine Corps began a modernization and restructuring of Amphibious Reconnaissance. In 1954 the concept of Force Reconnaissance was developed at Camp Pendleton, California, and an experimental reconnaissance team was formed. Three years later that team merged with the existing ARC to form the 1st Force Reconnaissance Company. Then in June 1958, the 2nd Force Reconnaissance Company was activated. The two Force Reconnaissance Companies first distinguished themselves during the Vietnam conflict and then again in the Gulf War, Afghanistan, and Iraq.

**Merging with USSOCOM.** At the time of the creation of the joint U.S. Special Operations Command in 1986, the Marine Corps retained its Force Reconnaissance Companies within its Air Ground Task Force command structure and did not contribute forces to USSOCOM. It was not until June 2003 that the Marine Corps stood up Special Operations Command Detachment One, at Camp Pendleton, as a pilot program to assess the value of Marine special operations forces permanently attached to USSOCOM.

Detachment 1 deployed in support of Operation Iraqi Freedom in March 2004 and operated under Naval Special Warfare Group One to execute direct action, coalition support, and battlefield shaping operations. A study by the Joint Special Operations University found that, “The trial deployment demonstrated the MCSOCOM Detachment could effectively conduct direct action and special reconnaissance... it is reasonable to suggest that the Detachment could also conduct or support foreign internal defense, counter terrorism, special activities, selected Theater Security Cooperation Plans, and other tasks as required.”

On 24 February 2006, MARSOC was activated during a ceremony at Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. That date marked the official entry of the Marine Corps into U.S. special operations forces and was a particularly important milestone because, in the words then Secretary of Defense Donald Rumsfeld offered during the ceremony, “...it pairs two of history’s most dedicated groups of warriors: the men and women of the U.S. Special Operations Command with the United States Marine Corps.”

Each of which, he continued, "... has become legendary for their agility, creativity and willingness to take on some of the most difficult assignments America can ask of our military."



### *MARSOC Core Activities*

MARSOC currently operates in three of United States Special Operations Command's eleven core activities. They include:

- a. Foreign Internal Defense (FID)
- b. Special Reconnaissance (SR)
- c. Direct Action (DA)
- d. As MARSOC grows the command is developing capabilities in three additional core activities:
- e. Unconventional Warfare (UW)
- f. Counterterrorism (CT)
- g. Information Operations (IO)

### *Marine Special Operations Advisor Group (MSOAG)*

The Marine Special Operations Advisor Group provides tailored military combat-skills training and advisor support for identified foreign forces in order to enhance their tactical capabilities and to prepare the environment as directed by USSOCOM. Marines and Sailors of the MSOAG train, advise, and



assist friendly host-nation forces—including naval and maritime military and paramilitary forces—to enable them to support their governments' internal security and stability, to counter subversion, and to reduce the risk of violence from internal and external threats. Coordinated by MARSOC, through USSOCOM, MSOAG deployments are in accordance with engagement priorities within the Global War on Terrorism.

The MSOAG, headquartered in Camp Lejeune, North Carolina, has two Marine Special Operations Companies. Currently they are the A and B Companies but will become the 3rd and 4th MSOBs late 2008.

Each MSOB will consist of three companies (commanded by a Major) consisting of five Marine Special Operations Teams of 14-men each. The Team Leader is a Captain and the Team Sergeant is an infantry Gunnery Sergeant. The Marine Special Operation Teams deploy under the operational control of the Geographic Combatant Commander. OPCON is exercised through the Theater Special Operations Commands. The teams conduct future-focused persistent engagement operations.

The MSOAG plans and conducts special operations separately or as part of a larger force. The Teams can conduct operations in remote areas and austere environments for extended periods with minimal external direction and support. The Teams will develop, organize, equip, train, and advise or direct indigenous forces. Each team has one of four core languages and completes immersion language training prior to each deployment. The MSOAG will provide training in Infantry Skills, Fire Support, Communications, Weapons Employment, Land Navigation, First Aid, and other special operations training as directed.

### *1st and 2nd Marine Special Operations Battalions (MSOBs)*

The mission of the 1st and 2nd Marine Special Operations Battalions (MSOBs) is to train, organize, equip and provide specially qualified



Marine forces for worldwide special operations missions as directed by MARSOC. The MSOBs provide command and control and basic staff functions for Marine Special Operations Companies (MSOCs). The MSOB Headquarters can augment a JSOTF and are deployable commands.

Each MSOB consists of a headquarters element and four MSOCs. Companies A through D are subordinate to 1st MSOB and are stationed on Camp Pendleton, California. Companies E through H are subordinate to 2d MSOB and are stationed on Camp Lejeune, North Carolina.

The Marine Special Operations Companies are the primary deployable units from the 1st and 2d MSOB, but as with the MSOAG, the companies are scalable. The MSOCs provide operational commanders with forward deployed and potentially sea based MARSOF.

The MSOCs deploy under OPCON of the assigned Geographic Combatant Commander and OPCON can be passed, as necessary, to and exercised by the Theater Special Operations Command (TSOC). The MSOC can deploy with the Marine Special Operations Battalion, a Marine Expeditionary Unit, or independently under a SOF command. Forward deployed, the MSOC will rely on either a Marine Expeditionary Unit or SOF commands for sustainment and enhanced support. The MSOC is commanded by a Major and consists of a HQ element and 3 MSOTs of 14 Marines and Sailors identical to the MSOAG.



When preparing to deploy the MSOC will receive a number of organic support personnel from within the MSOB, known as enablers. These enablers provide vital support capabilities for the MSOC. Current standing enablers are Direct Support Intelligence Teams comprised of a Signal Support Team, Counter Intelligence/Human Intelligence Team, an Intelligence Analyst, a Fire Support Team, an Explosive Ordnance Technicians, and a specialized insertion support team (parachute riggers, boat mechanics). These key enablers provide a base MSOC with enhanced capabilities in the areas of Intelligence, Fires, and Logistics. While planning, additional enablers may be identified as being critical to an upcoming deployment. Additional enablers are drawn from the MSOSG and attached to the MSOC for that deployment. These MSOCs are capable of conducting the following Core Activities: direct action—both on land and in a maritime environment, special reconnaissance, and foreign internal defense.

### *Marine Special Operations Support Group (MSOSG)*

The Marine Special Operations Support Group provides scalable and deployable support capabilities for worldwide special operations missions as directed by MARSOC.

Headquartered in Camp Lejeune, North Carolina it includes a tailored subordinate Support Detachment, located at Camp Pendleton, California. The MSOSG contains three subordinate companies: a Logistics Company, an Intelligence Company, and a Support Company. The Logistics Company provides support across MARSOC with Vehicle, Weapon, Communication and Optic Maintenance, Utility Engineering Functions, Motor Transportation, Medical, Supply, and Contracting. The Support Company provides Communication Assets, Combined Arms Planning and Coordination, and



has a limited K-9 support service. The Intelligence Company includes all-source intelligence fusion capabilities to include CI, SIGINT, HUMINT, TSCM and CNO.

### *Marine Special Operations School (MSOS)*

The Marine Special Operations School (MSOS) is the training and education arm of MARSOC and acts as the conduit between MARSOC, USSOCOM, the SOF Component Schools, and the Marine Corps Training and Education Command. Headquartered in Camp Lejeune, North Carolina. MSOS educates, trains, and certifies all MARSOF to be fully interoperable with all other forces within USSOCOM. MSOS is also responsible for Exercise Control Groups and they develop and standardize doctrine and tactics, techniques, and procedures (TTPs).



MSOS initially included two subordinate Special Missions Training Branches (SMTBs), one at Camp Pendleton, California and the second at Camp Lejeune. These two branches are being deactivated and will move their assets to MSOS.

MSOS's main function is to recruit, screen, assess, select and provide SOF-related individual training to designated marines and sailors for duty with MARSOC. In the future, MARSOC intends to draw from across the spectrum of military occupational specialties within the active duty Marine Forces, but currently focuses primarily on combat arms and selected combat support specialties. MSOS supervises the final selection of uniquely qualified candidates to ensure MARSOC has the right Marines and Sailors for operations conducted with minimal oversight and the mental and physical capabilities to operate in austere environments, under adverse conditions and continue to make sound decisions. As a result of this responsibility, MARSOC has established and is currently conducting an approximate 9 month-long Individual Training Course (ITC) for operators and combat support personnel.

**Note:** There are currently no programs in place to draw from a civilian recruitment level or from the Marine Corps Reserves.



# Appendix A. Special Operations Related Definitions

**AIR FORCE SPECIAL OPERATIONS COMMAND (AFSOC).** AFSOC is the Air Force service component to U.S. Special Operations Command.

**AIR FORCE SPECIAL OPERATIONS FORCES (AFSOF).** Those Active and Reserve Component Air Force forces designated by the SecDef that are specifically organized, trained, and equipped to conduct and support special operations.

**AMBASSADOR.** A diplomatic agent of the highest rank accredited to a foreign government or sovereign as the resident representative of his own government, also called the Chief of Mission. In the U.S. system, the Ambassador is the personal representative of the President and reports to him through the Secretary of State.

**ANTITERRORISM (AT).** Defensive measures used to reduce the vulnerability of individuals and property to terrorism. See also Counterterrorism, Combating Counterterrorism, and Terrorism.

**AREA ASSESSMENT.** In unconventional warfare, the prescribed collection of specific information by the commander which commences immediately after infiltration and is a continuous operation. It confirms, corrects, refutes, or adds to previous intelligence acquired from area studies and other sources prior to infiltration.

**AREA COMMAND.** In unconventional warfare, the organizational structure established within a joint special operations area to command and control resistance forces. It consists of the area commander, his staff, and representatives of the resistance element, to include Special Forces after infiltration.

**AREA ORIENTED.** Personnel or units whose organization, mission, training, and equipping are based upon projected operational deployment to a specific geographic or demographic area.

**ARMY SPECIAL OPERATIONS COMMAND (ARSOC).** ARSOC is a specific term, which may be used to refer to the Army component of a joint special operations command or task force.

**ARMY SPECIAL OPERATIONS FORCES (ARSOF).** Those Active and Reserve Component Army forces designated by the SecDef that are specifically organized, trained, and equipped to conduct and support special operations.

**ASSET (Intelligence) (DoD, IADB).** Any resources, person, group relationship, instrument, installation, or supply at the disposition of an intelligence organization for use in an operational or support role. Often used with a qualifying term such as agent asset or propaganda asset.

**ATTACHE.** A person attached to the embassy in a diplomatic status who is not normally a career member of the diplomatic service. In the U.S. system, attachés generally represent agencies other than the Department of State, (i.e., DoD, CIA, USIS).

**BARE BASE (Air Operations).** A base having a runway of minimum length and width constructed of matting or otherwise stabilized, to include taxiways, parking areas and a source of water. Other necessities required to operate under bare base conditions form a necessary part of the force package deployed to the bare base.

**CAPABILITY.** The ability to execute a specified course of action.

**CHARGE D' AFFAIRS.** An embassy official (normally the Deputy Chief of Mission or second highest-ranking officer), who takes charge of the mission in the absence of the Ambassador.

**CELL.** Small group of individuals who work together for a clandestine or subversive purpose and whose identity is unknown by members of other cells within the overall organization.

**CHIEF OF MISSION.** The Chief of Mission is the senior diplomatic official at a diplomatic mission. In the U.S. system, chiefs of missions have the diplomatic title of "Ambassador Extraordinary and Plenipotentiary" and are appointed by the President and confirmed by the Senate.

**CHIEF OF STATION (CIA).** The Chief of Station is the official in charge of the U.S. Central Intelligence Agency's (station) operations in a given foreign country.

**CIVIL ADMINISTRATION.** An administration established by a foreign government in 1) friendly territory under an agreement with the government of the area concerned to exercise certain authority normally the function of the local government; or 2) hostile territory occupied by United States forces, where a foreign government exercises executive, legislative, and judicial authority until an indigenous civil government can be established.

**CIVIL AFFAIRS (CA).** Designated active and reserve component forces and units organized, trained, and equipped specifically to conduct CA activities and to support civil-military operations (CMO).

**CIVIL AFFAIRS OPERATIONS.** Operations conducted by civil affairs forces that a) enhance the relationship between military forces and civil authorities in localities where military forces are present; b) require coordination with other interagency organizations, intergovernmental organizations, nongovernmental organizations, indigenous populations and institutions, and the private sector; and c) involve application of functional specialty skills that normally are the responsibility of civil government to enhance the conduct of civil-military operations.

**CIVIL MILITARY OPERATIONS (CMO).** The activities of a commander that establish, maintain, influence, or exploit relations between military forces, governmental and nongovernmental civilian organizations and authorities, and the civilian populace in a friendly, neutral, or hostile operational area in order to facilitate military operations and to consolidate and achieve operational U.S. objectives. Civil-military operations may include performance by military forces of activities and functions normally the responsibility of the local, regional, or national government. These activities may occur prior to, during, or subsequent to other military actions. They may also occur, if directed, in the absence of other military operations. Civil-military operations may be performed by designated CA, by other military forces, or by a combination of CA and other forces.

**CLANDESTINE OPERATION.** An operation sponsored or conducted by governmental departments or agencies in such a way as to assure secrecy or concealment. A clandestine operation differs from a covert operation in that emphasis is placed on concealment of the operation rather than the concealment of the identity of the sponsor. In special operations, an activity may be both covert and clandestine and may focus equally on operational considerations and intelligence-related activities.

**COALITION WARFARE.** The combined effort of nations with common strategic interests to coordinate their warfighting capability for defense of those interests.

**COMBAT SEARCH AND RESCUE (CSAR).** A specific task performed by rescue forces to effect the recovery of distressed personnel during war or operations other than war.

**COMBATING TERRORISM (CBT).** Actions, including antiterrorism (defensive measures taken to reduce vulnerability to terrorist acts) and counterterrorism (offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, and respond to terrorism), taken to oppose terrorism throughout the entire threat spectrum.

**COMBATANT COMMAND (COMMAND AUTHORITY) (COCOM).** Nontransferable command authority established by title 10 (Armed Forces), United States Code, section 164, exercised only by commanders of unified or specified commands unless otherwise directed by the President or the SecDef. COCOM authority cannot be delegated and is the authority of a combatant commander to perform those functions of command over assigned forces involving organizing and employing commands and forces, assigning tasks, designating objectives, and giving authoritative direction over all aspects of military operations, joint training, and logistics necessary to accomplish the missions assigned to the command. COCOM should be exercised through commanders of subordinate organizations — normally through subordinate Joint Force Commanders and Service and/or functional Component Commanders. COCOM provides full authority to organize and employ commands and forces as the combatant commander considers necessary to accomplish assigned missions. Operational control is inherent in COCOM.

**COMBINED JOINT SPECIAL OPERATIONS TASK FORCE (CJSOTF).** A task force composed of special operations units from one or more foreign countries and more than one U.S. Military Department formed to carry out a specific special operation or prosecute special operations in support of a theater campaign or other operations. The CJSOTF may have conventional nonspecial operations units assigned or attached to support the conduct of specific missions.

**COMMAND AND CONTROL WARFARE (C2W).** The integrated use of operations security, military deception, psychological operations, electronic warfare, and physical destruction, mutually supported by intelligence to deny information to influence, degrade, or destroy adversary command and control

capabilities, while protecting friendly command and control capabilities against such actions. Command and control warfare is an application of information warfare in military operations and is a subset of information warfare. Command and control warfare applies across the range of military operations and all levels of conflict. Also called C2W. C2W is both offensive and defensive: a. C2 attack. Prevent effective C2 adversary forces by denying information to, influencing, degrading, or destroying the adversary C2 system. b. C2-protect. Maintain effective command and control of own forces by turning to friendly advantage or negating adversary efforts to deny information to, influence, degrade, or destroy the friendly C2 system.

**CONSULATE GENERAL/CONSULATE.** A constituent post of an embassy in a foreign country located in an important city other than the national capital. Consulates General are larger than Consulates, with more responsibilities and additional staff.

**CONVENTIONAL FORCES.** Those forces capable of conducting operations using non nuclear weapons. Also, those forces not specially trained, equipped, and organized to conduct special operations. (See also Special Operations)

**COUNTERDRUG (CD).** Those active measures taken to detect, monitor, and counter the production, trafficking, and use of illegal drugs.

**COUNTERINTELLIGENCE (CI).** Information gathered and activities conducted to protect against espionage, other intelligence activities, sabotage, or assassinations conducted by or on behalf of foreign governments or elements thereof, foreign organizations, or foreign persons, or international terrorists activities.

**COUNTERMINE (CM).** To explode the main charge in a mine by the shock of a nearby explosion of another independent explosive charge or mine. The explosion of the main charge may be caused either by sympathetic detonation or through the explosive train and or firing mechanism of the mine.

**COUNTERMINE OPERATION.** In land mine warfare, an operation to reduce or eliminate the effects of mines or minefields.

**COUNTERPROLIFERATION (CP).** CP refers to actions taken to seize, destroy, render safe, capture, or recover weapons of mass destruction (WMD).

**COUNTERTERRORISM (CT).** Operations that include the offensive measures taken to prevent, deter, pre-empt, and respond to terrorism.

**COUNTRY TEAM.** Generally, the ranking representatives of embassy sections and other U.S. Government agencies operating in the country. i.e., CIA, AID, USIS. Chaired by the Ambassador or the Chief of Mission, the country team meets on a regular basis to advise the Ambassador on what the United States is or should be doing and to review current developments in the country.

**COVERT OPERATIONS.** An operation that is so planned and executed as to conceal the identity of or permit plausible denial by the sponsor. A covert operation differs from a clandestine operation in that emphasis is placed on the concealment of the identity of the sponsor rather than on concealment of the operation.

**DECEPTION.** Those measures designed to mislead the enemy by manipulation, distortion, or falsification of evidence to induce him to react in a manner prejudicial to his interests.

**DECONFLICT.** To reconcile or resolve a conflict in interests as in targeting.

**DENIAL MEASURE.** An action to hinder or deny the enemy use of space, personnel, or facilities. It may include destruction, removal, contamination, or erection of obstructions.

**DIRECT ACTION (DA).** Short-duration strikes and other small-scale offensive actions as a special operation in hostile, denied, or politically sensitive environments and which employ specialized military capabilities to seize, destroy, capture, recover, or damage designated targets. Direct action differs from conventional offensive actions in the level of physical and political risk, operational techniques, and the degree of discriminate and precise use of force to achieve specific objectives.

**ELECTRONIC COUNTER COUNTERMEASURES.** That division of electronic warfare involving actions taken to ensure friendly, effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum despite the enemy's use of electronic warfare.

**ELECTRONIC WARFARE (EW).** Any military action involving the use of electromagnetic and directed energy to control the electromagnetic spectrum or to attack the enemy. The three major subdivisions within EW are electronic attack, electronic protection, and electronic warfare support.

a. Electronic Attack (EA). That division of EW involving the use of electromagnetic, directed energy, or antiradiation weapons to attack personnel, facilities, or

equipment with the intent of degrading, neutralizing, or destroying enemy combat capability. EA includes 1. actions taken to prevent or reduce an enemy's effective use of the electromagnetic spectrum, such as jamming and electromagnetic deception, and 2. employment of weapons that use either electromagnetic or directed energy as their primary destructive mechanism (lasers, radio frequency weapons, particle beams).

b. Electronic Protection (EP). That division of electronic warfare involving actions taken to protect personnel, facilities, and equipment from any effects of friendly or enemy employment of EW that degrade, neutralize, or destroy friendly combat capability.

c. Electronic Warfare Support (ES). Those divisions of electronic warfare involving actions tasked by, or under direct control of, and operational commander to search for, intercept, identify, and locate sources of intentional and unintentional radiated electromagnetic energy for the purpose of immediate threat recognition, targeting, planning and conduct of future operations. Thus, ES provides information required for decisions involving electronic warfare operations and other tactical actions such as threat avoidance, targeting, and homing. Electronic warfare support data can be used to produce signal intelligence, provide targeting for electronic or destructive attack, and produce measurement and signature intelligence.

**EMERGENCY RESUPPLY.** A resupply mission that occurs based on a predetermined set of circumstances and time interval should radio contact not be established, or once established, is lost between the main base and between a special operations tactical element and its base.

**ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF FRIENDLY INFORMATION (EEFI).** Key positions likely to be asked by adversary officials and intelligence systems about specific friendly intentions, capabilities, and activities, so they can obtain answers critical to their operational effectiveness.

**ESSENTIAL ELEMENTS OF INFORMATION (EEI).** The critical items of information regarding the enemy and the environment needed by the commander by a particular time to relate with other available information and intelligence in order to assist in reaching a logical decision.

**EVASION AND ESCAPE (E&E).** The procedures and operations whereby military personnel and other selected individuals are enabled to emerge from an enemy-held or hostile area to areas under friendly control.

**EVASION AND RECOVERY (E&R).** The full spectrum of coordinated actions carried out by evaders, recovery forces, and operational recovery planners to effect the successful return of personnel isolated in hostile territory to friendly control.

**EXFILTRATION.** The removal of personnel or units from areas under enemy control.

**FOREIGN INTELLIGENCE.** Information relating to the capabilities, intentions, and activities of foreign powers, organizations, or persons, but not including counterintelligence, except for information on international terrorist activities.

**FOREIGN INTERNAL DEFENSE (FID).** Participation by civilian and military agencies of a government in any of the action programs taken by another government or other designated organization to free and protect its society from subversion, lawlessness, and insurgency.

**FORWARD ARMING AND REFUELING POINT (FARP).** A temporary facility, organized, equipped, and deployed by an aviation commander and normally located in the main battle area closer to the area of operation than the aviation unit's combat service area, to provide fuel and ammunition necessary for the employment of aviation maneuver units in combat. The FARP permits combat aircraft to rapidly refuel and rearm simultaneously. In special operations, a FARP is often quickly and clandestinely established to support a single operation, frequently in hostile or denied territory. Once its mission is served, it is as quickly dismantled, preferably without leaving signs of its presence.

**FORWARD OPERATIONAL BASE (FOB).** In special operations, a base usually located in friendly territory or afloat, which is established to extend command and control or communications or to provide support for training and tactical operations. Facilities are usually temporary; they may include an airfield or an unimproved airstrip, an anchorage, or a pier. The FOB may be the location of a special operations component headquarters or a smaller unit that is supported by a main operations base.

**FORWARD OPERATING LOCATION (FOL).** A temporary base of operations for small groups of personnel established near or within the JSOA to support training of indigenous personnel or tactical operations. The FOL may be established to support one or a series of missions. Facilities are austere; they may include an unimproved airstrip, a pier, or an anchorage. A main operational base or a forward operations base may support the FOL.

**HOST NATION (HN).** A nation that receives the forces and/or supplies of allied nations, coalition partners, and/or NATO organizations to be located on, to operate in, or to transit through its territory.

**HOST NATION SUPPORT (HNS).** Civil and/or military assistance rendered by a nation to foreign forces within its territory during peacetime, crises or emergencies, or war based on agreements mutually concluded between nations.

**HUMAN INTELLIGENCE (HUMINT).** A category of intelligence derived from information collected and provided by human sources.

**HUMANITARIAN ASSISTANCE (HA).** Programs conducted to relieve or reduce the results of natural or man-made disasters or other endemic conditions such as human pain, disease, hunger, or privation that might present a serious threat to life or that can result in great damage to or loss of property. HA provided by U.S. forces is limited in scope and duration. The assistance provided is designed to supplement or complement the efforts of the HN civil authorities or agencies that may have the primary responsibility for providing HA.

**INFILTRATION.** a. The movement through or into an area or territory occupied by either friendly or enemy troops or organizations. The movement is made either by small groups or by individuals at extended or irregular intervals. When used in connection with the enemy, it infers that contact is avoided. b. In intelligence usage, placing an agent or other person in a target area in hostile territory. Usually involves crossing a frontier or other guarded line. Methods of infiltration are black (clandestine); gray (through legal crossing point but under false documentation); and white (legal).

**INFORMATION.** a. Facts, data, or instructions in any medium or form. b. The meaning that a human assigns to data by means of the known conventions used in their representation.

**INFORMATION OPERATIONS (IO).** Actions taken to affect adversary information and information systems while defending one's own information and information systems.

**INFORMATION WARFARE (IW).** Information operations conducted during time of crisis or conflict to achieve or promote specific objectives over a specific adversary or adversaries.

**INTELLIGENCE REPORTING.** The preparation and conveyance of information by any means. More commonly, the term is restricted to reports as the collector

prepares them and as they are transmitted by him to his headquarters and by this component of the intelligence structure to one or more intelligence-producing components. Thus, even in this limited sense, reporting embraces both collection and dissemination. The term is applied to normal and specialist intelligence reports.

**JOINT CHIEFS OF STAFF.** Staff within the DoD, which consists of the Chairman, who is the presiding officer thereof but who has no vote; the Chief of Staff, United States Army; the Chief of Naval Operations; the Chief of Staff, United States Air Force; and the Commandant, United States Marine Corps. The Joint Chiefs of Staff are the principal military advisers to the President, the National Security Council, and the SecDef.

**JOINT COMBINED EXCHANGE TRAINING.** A program conducted overseas to fulfill U.S. forces training requirements and at the same time exchange the sharing of skills between U.S. forces and host nation counterparts. Also called JCET.

**JOINT DOCTRINE.** Fundamental principles that guide the employment of forces of two or more military departments in coordinated action toward a common objective. It is authoritative; as such, joint doctrine will be followed except when, in the judgement of the commander, exceptional circumstances dictate otherwise. It will be promulgated by or for the Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, in coordination with the combatant commands and Services.

**JOINT FORCE COMMANDER (JFC).** A general term applied to a Combatant Commander, Subunified Commander, or a Joint Task Force Commander authorized to exercise combatant command (command authority) or operational control over a joint force.

**JOINT FORCE SPECIAL OPERATIONS COMPONENT COMMANDER (JFSOCC).** The commander within a unified command, subordinate unified command, or Joint Task Force responsible to the establishing commander for making recommendations on the proper employment of assigned, attached, and/or made available for tasking special operations forces and assets; planning and coordinating special operations; or accomplishing such operational missions as may be assigned. The JFSOCC is given the authority necessary for the accomplishment of missions and tasks assigned by the establishing commander.

**JOINT PSYCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS TASK FORCE (JPOTF).** A joint special operations task force composed of headquarters and operational assets. It

assists the Joint Force Commander in developing strategic, operational, and tactical PSYOP plans for a theater campaign or other operations. Mission requirements will determine its composition and assigned or attached units to support the Joint Task Force Commander.

**JOINT SPECIAL OPERATIONS AIR COMPONENT COMMANDER (JSOACC).** The commander within a Joint Force Special Operations Command responsible for planning and executing joint special operations air activities.

**JOINT SPECIAL OPERATIONS AREA (JSOA).** A restricted area of land, sea, and airspace assigned by a Joint Force Commander to the commander of a joint special operations force to conduct special operations activities. The commander of joint special operations forces may further assign a specific area or sector within the JSOA to a subordinate commander for mission execution. The scope and duration of the special operations forces mission, friendly and hostile situation, and politico-military considerations all influence the number, composition, and sequencing of SOF deployed into a JSOA. It may be limited in size to accommodate a discrete direct action mission or may be extensive enough to allow continuing a broad range of unconventional warfare operations

**JOINT SPECIAL OPERATIONS TASK FORCE (JSOTF).** A joint task force composed of special operations units from more than one service, formed to carry out a specific special operation or prosecute special operations in support of a theater campaign or other operations. The JSOTF may have conventional non-special operations units assigned or attached to support the conduct of specific missions.

**JOINT TASK FORCE (JTF).** A joint force that is constituted and so designated by the SecDef, a Combatant Commander, a Subunified Commander, or an existing JTF commander.

**MAIN OPERATIONAL BASE (MOB).** A designated base established by a theater Special Operations Command, Joint Special Operations Task Force, or a component force in friendly or neutral territory which provides sustained command and control, administration, and logistics to support operations in designated areas, including forward operational bases and forward operating locations.

**MILITARY CIVIC ACTION.** The use of preponderantly indigenous military forces on projects useful to the local population at all levels in such fields as education,

training, public works, agriculture, transportation, communications, health, sanitation, and others contributing to economic and social development, which would also serve to improve the standing of the military forces with the population. (U.S. forces may at times advise or engage in military civic action in overseas areas.)

**MOBILE SEA BASE.** An afloat base composed of command and barracks facilities, small craft repair shops, and logistics support ships, which provide support as a base of operations from which a sea force can launch and conduct sea warfare.

**MOBILE TRAINING TEAM (MTT).** A team consisting of one or more U.S. military or civilian personnel sent on temporary duty, often to a foreign nation, to give instruction. The mission of the team is to train indigenous personnel to operate, maintain, and employ weapons and support systems, or to develop a self-training capability in a particular skill. The National Command Authorities may direct a team to train either military or civilian indigenous personnel, depending upon host nation requests.

**NATIONAL COMMAND AUTHORITIES (NCA).** The President and the SecDef or their duly deputized alternates or successors.

**NATIONAL OBJECTIVES.** The aims, derived from national goals and interests, toward which a national policy or strategy is directed and efforts and resources of the nation are applied.

**NATIONAL POLICY.** A broad course of action or statements of guidance adopted by the government at the national level in pursuit of national objectives.

**NATIONAL SECURITY.** A collective term encompassing both national defense and foreign relations of the United States. Specifically, the condition provided by

- a. A military or defense advantage over any foreign nation or group of nations,
- b. A favorable foreign relations position, and
- c. A defense posture capable of successfully resisting hostile or destructive action from within or without, overt or covert.

**NATIONAL STRATEGY.** The art and science of developing and using the political, economic, and psychological powers of a nation, together with its armed forces, during peace and war, to secure national objectives.

**NAVAL SPECIAL OPERATIONS COMMAND (NAVSOC).** NAVSOC is a specific term, which may be used to refer to the Navy component of a joint special operations command or task force.

**NAVAL SPECIAL OPERATIONS FORCES (NAVSOFF).** NAVSOFF is an umbrella term for Naval forces that conduct and support special operations.

**NAVAL SPECIAL WARFARE (NSW).** A designated naval warfare specialty which conducts operations in the coastal, riverine, and maritime environments. Naval special warfare emphasizes small, flexible, mobile units operating under, on, and from the sea. These operations are characterized by stealth, speed, and precise, violent application of force.

**NAVAL SPECIAL WARFARE GROUP (NSWG).** A permanent Navy echelon III major command to which most naval special warfare forces are assigned for some operational and all administrative purposes. It consists of a group headquarters with command and control, communications, and support staff; SEAL teams; and SEAL delivery vehicle teams.

**NAVAL SPECIAL WARFARE TASK GROUP (NSWTG).** A provisional subordinate element of a naval special warfare organization that plans, conducts, and supports special operations in support of fleet commanders and Joint Force Special Operations Component Commanders.

**NAVAL SPECIAL WARFARE TASK UNIT (NSWTU).** A provisional subordinate unit of a naval special warfare task group.

**OPERATIONAL CONTROL (OPCON).** Command authority that may be exercised by commanders at any echelon at or below the level of combatant command. OPCON is inherent in combatant command (command authority) and may be delegated within the command. When forces are transferred between combatant commands, the command relationship the gaining commander will exercise (and the losing commander will relinquish) over these forces must be specified by the SecDef. OPCON is the authority to perform those functions of command over subordinate forces involving organizing and employing forces and commands, assigning tasks, designating objectives, and giving authoritative direction necessary to accomplish the mission. OPCON includes authoritative direction over all aspects of military operations and joint training necessary to accomplish missions assigned to the command. OPCON should be exercised through the commanders of subordinate organizations. Normally this authority is exercised

through subordinate Joint Force Commanders and Service and/or functional Component Commanders. OPCON normally provides full authority to organize commands and forces and to employ those forces as the commander in OPCON considers necessary to accomplish assigned missions. OPCON does not, in and of itself, include authoritative direction for logistics or matters of administration, discipline, internal organization, or unit training.

**PSYCHOLOGICAL OPERATIONS (PSYOP).** Planned operations to convey selected information and indicators to foreign audiences to influence their emotions, motives, objective reasoning, and ultimately the behavior of foreign government, organizations, groups, and individuals. The purpose of PSYOP is to induce or reinforce foreign attitudes and behavior favorable to the originator's objectives.

**RAID.** An operation, usually small scale, involving a swift penetration of hostile territory to secure information, confuse the enemy, or to destroy installations. It ends with a planned withdrawal upon completion of the assigned mission.

**RANGERS.** Rapidly deployable airborne light infantry organized and trained to conduct highly complex joint direct action operations in coordination with or in support of other special operations units of all Services. Rangers can also execute direct action operations in support of conventional nonspecial operations missions conducted by a Combatant Commander and can operate as conventional light infantry when properly augmented with other elements of combined arms.

**SABOTAGE.** An act or acts with intent to injure, interfere with, or obstruct the national defense of a country by willfully injuring or destroying, or attempting to injure or destroy any national defense or war material, premises, or utilities, to include human and natural resources.

**SEA-AIR-LAND (SEAL) TEAM.** U.S. Navy forces organized, trained, and equipped to conduct special operations in maritime, littoral, and riverine environments.

**SEAL TROOP.** An administrative term for CONUS based Naval Special Warfare subordinate unit of an NSW squadron or SEAL Team. Normally commanded by a SEAL Lieutenant Commander (04), a SEALTP consists of a command and control element, an operational element, and other attachments, e.g. mobility element. Abbreviated as SEALTP.

**SEARCH AND RESCUE (SAR).** The use of aircraft, surface craft, submarines, specialized rescue teams, and equipment to search for and rescue personnel in distress on land or at sea.

**SECURITY ASSISTANCE.** Group of programs authorized by the Foreign Assistance Act of 1961, as amended, and the Arms Export Control Act of 1976, as amended, or other related statutes by which the United States provides defense articles, military training, and other defense-related services, by grant, credit, or cash sales, in furtherance of national policies and objectives.

**SECURITY ASSISTANCE ORGANIZATIONS (SAO).** All DoD elements located in a foreign country with assigned responsibilities for carrying out security assistance management functions. It includes military assistance advisory groups, military missions and groups, offices of defense and military cooperation, liaison groups, and defense attaché personnel designated to perform security assistance functions.

**SPECIAL ACTIVITIES (SA).** Activities conducted in support of national foreign policy objectives, which are planned and executed so the role of the United States Government is not apparent or acknowledged publicly. They are also functions in support of such activities, but are not intended to influence United States political processes, public opinion, policies, or media and do not include diplomatic activities or the collection and production of intelligence or related support functions.

**SPECIAL BOAT DETACHMENT (SBD).** The deployable, operational entity of a SBTP. SBDs operate combatant craft in the conduct of SO and maintain the associated craft and equipment.

**SPECIAL BOAT TEAM (SBT).** U.S. Navy forces organized, trained, and equipped to conduct or support special operations with patrol boats or other combatant craft.

**SPECIAL BOAT TROOP (SBTP).** The deployable, operational entity of an SBT normally commanded by a SEAL O-3 and consists of a small C2 element, CSS and other capabilities, and one or more SB Detachments (SBD).

**SPECIAL FORCES (SF).** U.S. Army forces organized, trained, and equipped specifically to conduct special operations with an emphasis on unconventional warfare capabilities.

**SPECIAL FORCES GROUP (SFG).** A combat arms organization capable of planning, conducting, and supporting special operations activities in all operational

environments in peace, conflict, and war. It consists of a group headquarters and Headquarters Company, a support company, and Special Forces battalions. The group can operate as a single unit, but normally the battalions plan and conduct operations from widely separated locations. The group provides general operational direction and synchronizes the activities of its subordinate battalions. Although principally structured for unconventional warfare, SFG units are capable of task organizing to meet specific requirements.

**SPECIAL FORCES OPERATIONAL BASE (SFOB).** A command, control, and support base established and operated by a Special Forces group or battalion from organic and attached resources. The base commander and his staff coordinate and synchronize the activities of subordinate and forward-deployed forces. The SFOB is normally established for an extended period of time to support a series of operations.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS (SO).** Operations conducted in hostile, denied, or politically sensitive environments to achieve military, diplomatic, informational, and/or economic objectives employing military capabilities for which there is no broad conventional force requirement. These operations often require low-visibility, clandestine, or covert capabilities. SO are applicable across the range of military operations. They may be conducted independently or in conjunction with operations of conventional forces or other government agencies and may include operations through, with, or by indigenous or surrogate forces. SO differ from conventional operations in degree of physical and political risk, operational techniques, mode of employment, independence from friendly support, and dependence on detailed operational intelligence and indigenous assets.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS COMMAND (SOC).** A subordinate, unified, or other joint command established by a Joint Force Commander to plan, coordinate, conduct, and support joint special operations within the Joint Force Commander's assigned area of operations.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS COMMAND AND CONTROL ELEMENT (SOCCE).** The focal point for the synchronization of special operations forces with conventional forces operations. It performs command and control or liaison functions according to mission requirements and as directed by the establishing special operations forces commander. Its level of authority and responsibility may vary widely. The SOCCE normally collocates with the command post of the supported force. The SOCCE can also receive special operations forces operational, intelligence,

and target acquisition reports directly from deployed special operations elements and provide them to the supported component headquarters. The SOCCE remains under the operational control of the Joint Force Special Operations Component Commander, or the Commander, Joint Special Operations Task Force.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS FORCES (SOF).** Those active and Reserve Component forces of the military services designated by the SecDef and specifically organized, trained, and equipped to conduct and support special operations.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS LIAISON ELEMENT (SOLE).** A special operations liaison team provided by the Joint Force Special Operations Component Commander to the Joint Force Air Component Commander (if designated), or appropriate Service component air command and control organization, to coordinate, deconflict, and integrate special operations air, surface, and subsurface operations with conventional air operations.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS LOW LEVEL (SOLL).** USAF strategic and tactical airlift SOLL crews are trained to perform specialized low-level flight. SOLL II is an NVG landing, airdrop, and low-level flight capability with avionics upgrades in designated aircraft.

**SPECIAL OPERATIONS WEATHER TEAM (SOWT).** A task organized team of Air Force personnel organized, trained, and equipped to collect critical meteorological, oceanographic, and hydrological information from data sparse areas. These teams are trained to operate independently in permissive or uncertain environments, or as augmentation to other special operations elements in hostile environments, in direct support of special operations.

**SPECIAL RECONNAISSANCE (SR).** Reconnaissance and surveillance actions conducted as a special operation in hostile, denied, or politically sensitive environments to collect or verify information of strategic or operational significance, employing military capabilities not normally found in conventional forces. These actions provide an additive capability for commanders and supplement other conventional reconnaissance and surveillance actions.

**SPECIAL TACTICS (ST).** U.S. Air Force special operations forces organized, trained, and equipped to conduct special operations. They include combat control team, pararescue, and special operations weather personnel who provide the interface between air and ground combat operations.

**SPECIAL TACTICS TEAM (STT).** A task-organized element of special tactics that may include combat control, pararescue, and special operations weather personnel. Functions include austere airfield and assault zone reconnaissance, surveillance, establishment, and terminal control; combat search and rescue; combat casualty care and evacuation staging; terminal attack control; and environmental reconnaissance and austere weather operations.

**STRATEGIC INTELLIGENCE.** (DoD) Intelligence that is required for the formation of policy and military plans at national and international levels. Strategic intelligence and tactical intelligence differ primarily in level of application but may also vary in terms of scope and detail.

**STRATEGIC PSYCHOLOGICAL ACTIVITIES.** Planned psychological activities in peace, crisis, and war, which pursue objectives to gain the support and cooperation of friendly and neutral countries and to reduce the will and capacity of hostile or potentially hostile countries to wage war.

**TACTICAL CONTROL (TACON).** Command authority over assigned or attached forces or commands, or military capability or forces made available for tasking, which is limited to the detailed direction and control of movements or maneuvers within the operational area necessary to accomplish missions or tasks assigned. TACON is inherent in operational control. TACON may be delegated to and exercised at any level at or below the level of combatant command. When forces are transferred between combatant commands, the command relationship the gaining commander will exercise (and the losing commander will relinquish) over these forces must be specified by the SecDef. TACON provides sufficient authority for controlling or directing the application of force or tactical use of combat support assets within the assigned mission or task.

**TERMINAL GUIDANCE.** a. The guidance applied to a guided missile between midcourse guidance and arrival in the vicinity of the target. b. Electronic, mechanical, visual, or other assistance given an aircraft pilot to facilitate arrival at, operation within or over, landing upon, or departure from an air landing or airdrop facility.

**TERRORISM.** The calculated use of unlawful violence or threat of unlawful violence to inculcate fear; intended to coerce or intimidate governments or societies in the pursuit of goals that are generally political, religious, or ideological.

**UNCONVENTIONAL WARFARE (UW).** A broad spectrum of military and paramilitary operations, normally of long duration, predominantly conducted through, with, or by indigenous or surrogate forces who are organized, trained, equipped, supported, and directed in varying degrees by an external source. It includes, but is not limited to, guerrilla warfare, subversion, sabotage, intelligence activities, and unconventional assisted recovery.

**U.S. COUNTRY TEAM.** The senior, in country, United States coordinating and supervising body, headed by the Chief of the United States diplomatic mission, usually an ambassador, and composed of the senior member of each represented United States department or agency. (See also Country Team.)

**USSOCOM BOARD OF DIRECTORS (BOD).** The BOD is an integral part of the USSOCOM Strategic Planning Process co-chaired by the COMUSSOCOM and the ASD(SO/LIC) with the SOF Service Component Commanders participating as members.

**USSOCOM STRATEGIC PLANNING PROCESS.** A process that drives decision making related to resourcing, acquisition, sustainment, and modernization. It is a continuous process with a biennial cycle that facilitates the shaping of the strategic direction of SOF.

**WEAPONS OF MASS DESTRUCTION (WMD).** Weapons that are capable of a high order of destruction and/or of being used in such a manner as to destroy large numbers of people. WMD can be high explosives or nuclear, chemical, biological, and radiological weapons, but exclude the means of transporting or propelling the weapon where such means is a separable and divisible part of the weapon.

# Appendix B. Glossary

**AA&E.** Arms, Ammunition, and Explosives

**ABN.** Airborne

**ACC.** Area Component Commander; Air Combat Command

**ACE.** Aviation Combat Element

**ADCON.** Administrative Control

**ADE.** Aerial Delivery Equipment

**AFRES.** Air Force Reserve

**AFSOB.** Air Force Special Operations Base

**AFSOC.** Air Force Special Operations Command/Component

**AFSOD.** Air Force Special Operations Detachment

**AFSOD/E.** Air Force Special Operations Detachment or Element

**AFSOF.** Air Force Special Operations Forces

**AIE.** Alternate Insertion and Extraction

**AIS.** Automated Information System(s)

**ALE.** ARSOF Liaison Elements

**AMC.** Air Mobility Command; Army Materiel Command

**ANG.** Air National Guard

**AO.** Area of Operations

**AOB.** Advanced Operational Base

**AOC.** Air Operations Center (Capable)

**AOR.** Area of Responsibility

**ARNG.** Army National Guard

**ARRS.** Aerospace Rescue and Recovery Squadron

**ARSOA.** Army Special Operations Aviation

**ARSOC.** Army Special Operations Command

**ARSOF.** Army Special Operations Forces

**ARSOTF.** Army Special Operations Task Force

**ASD (SO/LIC).** Assistant Secretary of Defense for Special Operations and Low-Intensity Conflict

**ASDS.** Advanced SEAL Delivery System

**ASG.** Area Support Group

**AT.** Antiterrorism

**AVN.** Aviation

**AZ.** Assault Zone

**BCT.** Brigade Combat Team

**BDA.** Battle Damage Assessment

**BDE.** Brigade

**BN.** Battalion

**BOD.** Board of Directors (USSOCOM)

**BSSG.** Brigade Service Support Group

**BUD/S.** Basic Underwater Demolition/SEAL

**C2.** Command and Control

**C3.** Command, Control, and Communications

**C3I.** Command, Control, Communications, and Intelligence

**C4I.** Command, Control, Communications, Computers, and Intelligence

**C4I2.** Command, Control, Communications, Computers, Intelligence, and Interoperability

**CRISR.** Command, Control, Communications, Computers, Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance

**CA.** Civil Affairs

**CAB.** Civil Affairs Battalion

**CAMPS.** Computer Aided Mission Planning System

**CAO.** Civil Affairs Operations

**CAP.** Combat Air Patrol

**CAS.** Close Air Support

**CBR.** Chemical, Biological, and Radiological

---

<b>CBRNE.</b> Chemical, Biological, Radiological, Nuclear, and High-Yield Explosives	<b>CONUS.</b> Continental United States
<b>CBT.</b> Combating Terrorism	<b>COS.</b> Chief of Staff
<b>CCDR.</b> Combatant Commander	<b>COSCOM.</b> Corps Support Command
<b>CCT.</b> Combat Control Team	<b>CP.</b> Counter Proliferation
<b>CD.</b> Counterdrug	<b>CRRC.</b> Combat Rubber Raiding Craft
<b>CE.</b> Command Element	<b>CS.</b> Combat Support
<b>CFT.</b> Cross Functional Team	<b>CS/CSS.</b> Combat Support/Combat Service Support
<b>CFTP.</b> Cross Functional Troop	<b>CSAR.</b> Combat Search and Rescue
<b>CG.</b> Commanding General	<b>CSSE.</b> Combat Service Support Element
<b>CI.</b> Counterintelligence	<b>CT.</b> Counterterrorism
<b>CINC.</b> Commander-in-Chief (President of the United States)	<b>DA.</b> Direct Action
<b>CJTF.</b> Commander, Joint Task Force	<b>DANTAN.</b> Detection Avoidance Navigation, Threat Avoidance Navigation
<b>CM.</b> Countermine	<b>DDS.</b> Dry Deck Shelter
<b>CM&amp;D.</b> Collection Management and Dissemination	<b>DET.</b> Detachment
<b>CMO.</b> Civil-Military Operations	<b>DFT.</b> Deployments for Training
<b>CMS.</b> Cryptologic Material Security	<b>DoD.</b> Department of Defense
<b>COA.</b> Course of Action	<b>DoDD.</b> Department of Defense Directive
<b>COCOM.</b> Combatant Command	<b>DoS.</b> Department of State
<b>COMAFSOC.</b> Commander, Air Force Special Operations Command	<b>DR.</b> Direct Relief
<b>COMSEC.</b> Communications Security	<b>DS.</b> Direct Support
<b>COMSOC.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command	<b>DZ.</b> Drop Zone
<b>COMSOCAFRICA.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command Africa	<b>E&amp;E.</b> Evasion and Escape
<b>COMSOCCENT.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command Central	<b>E&amp;R.</b> Evasion and Recovery
<b>COMSOCEUR.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command Europe	<b>EA.</b> Emergency Action
<b>COMSOCKOR.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command Korea	<b>ECCM.</b> Electronic Counter-Countermeasures
<b>COMSOPAC.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command Pacific	<b>ECM.</b> Electronic Countermeasures
<b>COMSOCSOUTH.</b> Commander, Special Operations Command South	<b>EEFI.</b> Essential Elements of Friendly Information
<b>CONOPS.</b> Concept of Operations	<b>EI.</b> Essential Elements of Information
	<b>ELINT.</b> Electronic Intelligence
	<b>EMCON.</b> Emissions Control
	<b>EOB.</b> Electronic Order of Battle
	<b>EOD.</b> Explosive Ordnance Disposal
	<b>ESM.</b> Electronic Warfare Support Measures
	<b>EW.</b> Electronic Warfare
	<b>FARP.</b> Forward Arming and Refueling Point

---

<b>FHP.</b> Force Health Protection	<b>JASORS.</b> Joint Advanced Special Operations Radio System
<b>FID.</b> Foreign Internal Defense	<b>JCD&amp;E.</b> Joint Concept Development and Experimentation
<b>FMTU.</b> Foreign Military Training Unit	<b>JCET.</b> Joint and Combined Exchange for Training
<b>FOB.</b> Forward Operations Base	<b>JCMOTF.</b> Joint Civil-Military Operations Task Force
<b>FOL.</b> Forward Operating Location	<b>JCS.</b> Joint Chiefs of Staff
<b>FPB.</b> Fast Patrol Boat	<b>JCSE.</b> Joint Communications Support Element
<b>FSB.</b> Forward Staging Base	<b>JFACC.</b> Joint Force Air Component Commander
<b>GCC.</b> Geographic Combatant Command	<b>JFC.</b> Joint Force Commander
<b>GPF.</b> General Purpose Forces	<b>JFLCC.</b> Joint Force Land Component Commander
<b>GPS.</b> Global Positioning System	<b>JFMCC.</b> Joint Force Maritime Component Commander
<b>GS.</b> General Support	<b>JFSOCC.</b> Joint Force Special Operations Component Commander
<b>GW.</b> Guerrilla Warfare	<b>JI&amp;I.</b> Joint Interoperability and Integration
<b>GWOT.</b> Global War on Terrorism	<b>JOC.</b> Joint Operations Center
<b>FHA.</b> Foreign Humanitarian Assistance	<b>JOPES.</b> Joint Operations Planning and Execution System
<b>HA.</b> Humanitarian Assistance	<b>JP.</b> Joint Publication
<b>HAHO.</b> High Altitude High Opening	<b>JPOTF.</b> Joint Psychological Operations Task Force
<b>HALO.</b> High Altitude Low Opening	<b>JPOTG.</b> Joint Psychological Operations Task Group
<b>HF.</b> High Frequency	<b>JRCC.</b> Joint Rescue Coordination Center
<b>HHQ.</b> Higher Headquarters	<b>JSCP.</b> Joint Strategic Capabilities Plan
<b>HN.</b> Host Nation	<b>JSOA.</b> Joint Special Operations Area
<b>HNS.</b> Host Nation Support	<b>JSOACC.</b> Joint Special Operations Air Component Commander
<b>HRS.</b> Humanitarian Relief Service	<b>JSOC.</b> Joint Special Operations Command
<b>HQ.</b> Headquarters	<b>JSOSE.</b> Joint Special Operations Support Element
<b>HQMC.</b> Headquarters Marine Corps	<b>JSOTF.</b> Joint Special Operations Task Force
<b>HSLPADS.</b> High Speed Low Level Aerial Delivery System	<b>JTF.</b> Joint Task Force
<b>HUMINT.</b> Human Intelligence	<b>KTS.</b> Knots
<b>IDAD.</b> Internal Defense and Development	<b>LOGSU.</b> Logistics and Support Unit
<b>IO.</b> Information Operations	<b>MARSOC.</b> Marine Corps Forces Special Operations Command
<b>IRCM.</b> Infrared Countermeasures	<b>MARSOF.</b> Marine Corps Special Operations Forces
<b>IRR.</b> Individual Ready Reserve	<b>MATC.</b> Mini Armored Troop Carrier
<b>ISB.</b> Intermediate Staging Base	
<b>ISE.</b> Intelligence Support Element	
<b>ISR.</b> Intelligence, Surveillance, and Reconnaissance	
<b>ITC.</b> Individual Training Course	

---

<b>MCCT.</b> Mobile Command Communications Team	<b>OCONUS.</b> Outside the Continental United States
<b>MCD.</b> Mobile Communication Detachment	<b>OPCON.</b> Operational Control
<b>METL.</b> Mission Essential Task List	<b>OPLAN.</b> Operation Plan
<b>MFP.</b> Major Force Program	<b>OPSEC.</b> Operational Security
<b>MI.</b> Military Intelligence	<b>OSC.</b> Operational Support Company
<b>MSOAG.</b> Marine Special Operations Advisory Group	<b>PB.</b> Patrol Boat
<b>MSOB.</b> Marine Special Operations Battalion	<b>PBL.</b> Patrol Boat Light
<b>MSOC.</b> Marine Special Operations Company	<b>PBR.</b> Patrol Boat, Riverine
<b>MSOSG.</b> Marine Special Operations Support Group	<b>PED.</b> Processing, Exploitation, and Dissemination
<b>MSOS.</b> Marine Special Operations School	<b>PJ.</b> Pararescue
<b>MSOT.</b> Marine Special Operations Team	<b>POB/C.</b> PSYOP Battalion or Company
<b>MTG.</b> Master Training Guide	<b>POC.</b> Point of Contact
<b>MTT.</b> Mobile Training Team	<b>POG.</b> Psychological Operations Group
<b>NAB.</b> Naval Amphibious Base	<b>POG(A).</b> Psychological Operations Group (Airborne)
<b>NAS.</b> Naval Air Station	<b>PR.</b> Personnel Recovery
<b>NATO.</b> North Atlantic Treaty Organization	<b>PSYOP.</b> Psychological Operations
<b>NAVSO.</b> Navy Special Operations Forces	<b>RATTV.</b> Rescue All Terrain Vehicle
<b>NAVSPECWARCEN.</b> Naval Special Warfare Center	<b>R&amp;S.</b> Reconnaissance and Surveillance
<b>NAVSPECWARCOM.</b> Naval Special Warfare Command	<b>RC.</b> Reserve Component
<b>NAVSPECWARDEVGRU.</b> Naval Special Warfare Development Group	<b>RG.</b> Regiment
<b>NCA.</b> National Command Authorities	<b>RGR.</b> Ranger
<b>NCC.</b> Naval Component Command	<b>RIB.</b> Rigid Inflatable Boat
<b>NEO.</b> Noncombatant Evacuation Operation(s)	<b>ROK.</b> Republic of Korea
<b>NM.</b> Nautical Miles	<b>ROKN.</b> Republic of Korea Navy
<b>NOD.</b> Night Observation Devices	<b>RSE.</b> Ranger Support Element
<b>NOSG.</b> Naval Operations Support Group	<b>RSOV.</b> Ranger Special Operations Vehicle
<b>NR.</b> Naval Reserve	<b>SA.</b> Security Assistance
<b>NRF.</b> Naval Reserve Force	<b>SACEUR.</b> Supreme Allied Commander Europe
<b>NSW.</b> Naval Special Warfare	<b>SAO.</b> Security Assistance Office
<b>NSWG/U.</b> Naval Special Warfare Group or Unit	<b>SATCOM.</b> Satellite Communications
<b>NSWTG.</b> Naval Special Warfare Task Group	<b>SBT.</b> Special Boat Team
<b>NSWTU.</b> Naval Special Warfare Task Unit	<b>SBTP.</b> Special Boat Troop
<b>NVG.</b> Night-Vision Goggles	<b>SBTP-C.</b> Special Boat Troop - Coastal
	<b>SBTP-R.</b> Special Boat Troop - Riverine
	<b>SCI.</b> Sensitive Compartmented Information

---

---

<b>SCIF.</b> Sensitive Compartmented Information Facility	<b>SOCAPAC.</b> Special Operations Command, Pacific
<b>SCUBA.</b> Self-Contained Underwater Breathing Apparatus	<b>SOC SOUTH.</b> Special Operations Command, South
<b>SDV.</b> SEAL Delivery Vehicle	<b>SOF.</b> Special Operations Forces
<b>SDVT.</b> SEAL Delivery Vehicle Team	<b>SOG.</b> Special Operations Group (USAF)
<b>SEABEE.</b> Navy Construction Battalion Personnel	<b>SOLE.</b> Special Operations Liaison Element
<b>SEAL.</b> Sea-Air-Land	<b>SOLL.</b> Special Operations Low Level
<b>SEALTP.</b> Sea-Air-Land Troop	<b>SOS.</b> Special Operations Squadron
<b>SF.</b> Special Forces	<b>SOTF.</b> Special Operations Task Force
<b>SFA.</b> Security Forces Assistance	<b>SOW.</b> Special Operations Wing
<b>SFG.</b> Special Forces Group	<b>SOWT.</b> Special Operations Weather Team
<b>SFG(A).</b> Special Forces Group (Airborne)	<b>SPTCONF.</b> Support Confirmation
<b>SFOB.</b> Special Forces Operational Base	<b>SPTREQ.</b> Support Request
<b>SFOD.</b> Special Forces Operational Detachment	<b>SR.</b> Special Reconnaissance
<b>SIG.</b> Signal	<b>STT.</b> Special Tactics Team
<b>SIGINT.</b> Signal Intelligence	<b>SUPPACT.</b> Support Activity
<b>SJA.</b> Staff Judge Advocate	<b>SWCC.</b> Special Warfare Combatant-craft Crewmen
<b>SME.</b> Subject Matter Expert	<b>TACON.</b> Tactical Control
<b>SMTB.</b> Special Missions Training Branch	<b>TF.</b> Task Force
<b>SO.</b> Special Operations	<b>TF/TA.</b> Terrain Following/Terrain Avoidance
<b>SOA.</b> Special Operations Area; Special Operations Aviation	<b>THREATCON.</b> JCS Terrorist Threat Condition
<b>SOAG.</b> Special Operations Aviation Group	<b>TIP.</b> Target Intelligence Package
<b>SOC.</b> Special Operations Command; Special Operations Capable	<b>TOA.</b> Transfer of Authority
<b>SOCAFRICA.</b> Special Operations Command, Africa Command	<b>TOC.</b> Tactical Operations Center
<b>S OCC.</b> Special Operations Control Center	<b>TOE.</b> Table of Operations and Equipment
<b>SOCCE.</b> Special Operations Command and Control Element	<b>TOS.</b> Theater Operating System
<b>S OCCENT.</b> Special Operations Command, Central Command	<b>TOT.</b> Time on Target
<b>S OCEUR.</b> Special Operations Command, Europe	<b>TRADET.</b> Training Detachment
<b>S OCJFCOM.</b> Special Operations Command, Joint Forces Command	<b>TSC.</b> Theater Security Cooperation
<b>S OCKOR.</b> Special Operations Command, Korea	<b>TSOC.</b> Theater Special Operations Command
<b>S OCOM.</b> Special Operations Command	<b>TTP.</b> Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
	<b>TTP&amp;E.</b> Tactics, Techniques, Procedures, and Equipment
	<b>UAV.</b> Unmanned Aerial Vehicle
	<b>UCP.</b> Unified Command Plan
	<b>UDT.</b> Underwater Demolition Team
	<b>UHF.</b> Ultra-High Frequency

---

**USAID.** United States Agency for International Development

**USASOC.** United States Army Special Operations Command

**USCENTCOM.** U.S. Central Command

**USDR.** United States Defense Representative

**USEUCOM.** United States European Command

**USJFCOM.** U.S. Joint Forces Command

**USPACOM.** United States Pacific Command

**USIA.** United States Information Agency

**USNORTHCOM.** U.S. Northern Command

**USSOCOM.** United States Special Operations Command

**UW.** Unconventional Warfare

**VHF.** Very High Frequency

**VLS.** Vertical Launch System

**WMD.** Weapons of Mass Destruction

# Appendix C. Bibliography

Joint Pub 1-02, *Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms*, April 2001, amended May 2008.

Joint Pub 3-0, *Joint Operations*, September 2006.

Joint Pub 3-05, *Doctrine for Joint Special Operations*, December 2003.

Joint Pub 3-05.1, *Joint Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Joint Special Operations Task Force Operations*, April 2007.

Joint Pub 3-13, *Information Operations*, February 2006.

Joint Pub 3-50, *Personnel Recovery*, January 2007.

Joint Pub 3-53, *Doctrine for Joint Psychological Operations*, September 2003.

Joint Pub 3-57, *Civil-Military Operations*, July 2008.

Joint Pub 5-0, *Joint Operations Planning*, December 2006.

*US Special Operations Forces Posture Statement 2007*.

*ASD/SOLIC CORE SOC Manpower Study 2001*.

*USSOCOM Publication 1*.

*US Army Special Operations Forces Reference Data*.

US Army FM 3-05, *Psychological Operations*, September 2003.

4th Psychological Operations Group, *Capabilities Handbook*.

CJCSI 3110.05C

DoDD S-3600.1.

DoDD 5240.1.

DoDD S-5110.10

USAF DD 2-5.5.

AFI 11-2MC-130 Volume III, Addenda A – D

C-130 Technical Order 1C-130A-9, 31 Jan 2005.

DOD Facts on File.

NAVSPECWARCOM Organization and Capabilities Briefing.

NWP 3-05, *Naval Special Warfare*

